

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization  
International Bureau(43) International Publication Date  
27 November 2003 (27.11.2003)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number  
**WO 03/096980 A2**(51) International Patent Classification<sup>7</sup>: **A61K**(US). **SIMPKINS, Ligaya** [US/US]; 7 Tanglewood Drive, Titusville, NJ 08560 (US). **HOLUBEC, Alexandra** [US/US]; 29 Truman Avenue, Princeton, NJ 08540 (US).

(21) International Application Number: PCT/US03/15375

(22) International Filing Date: 15 May 2003 (15.05.2003)

(74) Agents: **O'BRIEN, Maureen** et al.; Bristol-Myers Squibb Company, P.O. Box 4000, Princeton, NJ 08543-4000 (US).

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:

60/381,616 17 May 2002 (17.05.2002) US  
60/406,711 29 August 2002 (29.08.2002) US(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): **BRISTOL-MYERS SQUIBB COMPANY** [US/US]; P.O. Box 4000, Route 206 and Provinceline Road, Princeton, NJ 08543-4000 (US).

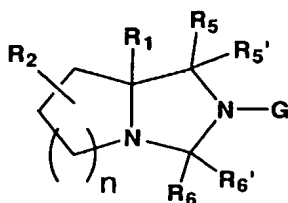
(72) Inventors; and

(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): **SUN, Chongqing** [CN/US]; 527 Dutch Neck Road, East Windsor, NJ 08520 (US). **HAMANN, Lawrence** [US/US]; 24 East Riding Drive, Cherry Hill, NJ 08003 (US). **AUGERI, David** [US/US]; 107 Carter Road, Princeton, NJ 08540 (US). **BI, Yingzhi** [CN/US]; 5 Mershon Lane, Plainsboro, NJ 08536 (US). **ROBL, Jeffrey** [US/US]; 7 Tulip Drive, Newtown, PA 18940 (US). **HUANG, Yan-Ting** [CA/US]; 42 Manley Road, Pennington, NJ 08534 (US). **WANG, Tammy** [US/US]; 18 Dix Lane, Lawrenceville, NJ 08648(81) Designated States (*national*): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EC, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PH, PL, PT, RO, RU, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, YU, ZA, ZM, ZW.(84) Designated States (*regional*): ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK, TR), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).**Published:**

— without international search report and to be republished upon receipt of that report

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

(54) Title: BICYCLIC MODULATORS OF ANDROGEN RECEPTOR FUNCTION



(1)

(57) Abstract: The invention provides for a pharmaceutical composition capable of modulating the androgen receptor comprising a compound of formula (1) wherein the substituents are as described herein. Further provided are methods of using such compounds for the treatment of nuclear hormone receptor-associated conditions, such as age related diseases, for example sarcopenia. Also provided are pharmaceutical compositions containing such compounds and processes for preparing some of the compounds of the invention.

BICYCLIC MODULATORS OF ANDROGEN  
RECEPTOR FUNCTION

CROSS-REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATION

5           This application claims the benefit of U.S. Provisional Application Nos. 60/381,616, filed May 17, 2002 and 60/406,711, filed August 29, 2002, which are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety.

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

10           The present invention relates to bicyclic compounds, methods of using such compounds in the treatment of androgen receptor-associated conditions, such as age-related diseases, for example sarcopenia, and to pharmaceutical compositions containing such compounds.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

15           Nuclear hormone receptors (NHR's) constitute a large super-family of structurally-related and sequence-specific gene regulators scientists have named "ligand-dependent transcription factors." R.M. Evans, *Science*, 240:889 (1988). The steroid binding NHR's (SB-NHR's) form a recognized subset of  
20   the NHR's, including the progesterone receptor (PR), androgen receptor (AR), estrogen receptor (ER), glucocorticoid receptor (GR) and mineralocorticoid receptor (MR). The conventional nuclear hormone receptors are generally transactivators in the presence of ligand, which selectively bind to the NHR in a way that effects gene transcription. In the absence of a corresponding ligand,  
25   some of the orphan receptors behave as if they are transcriptionally inert. Others, however, behave as either constitutive activators or repressors. These orphan nuclear hormone receptors are either under the control of ubiquitous ligands that have not been identified, or do not need to bind ligand to exert these activities.

The AR is a ligand-activated transcriptional regulatory protein that mediates induction of male sexual development and function through its activity with endogenous androgens. In addition, androgens are associated with male and female maintenance of muscle mass and strength, bone mass and erythropoiesis. Androgens, such as testosterone, also play an important role in many physiological processes, such as differentiation of male internal and external genitalia, development and maintenance of male secondary sexual characteristics (e.g., the development of prostate, seminal vesicles, penis, scrotum, skeletal muscle, redistribution of body fat, stimulation of long bone growth, closure of epiphyses, development of male hair growth pattern and enlargement of larynx), the maintenance of sexual behavior and function (e.g., libido and potency) and spermatogenesis (in man).

As one ages, the serum androgen concentration in the body declines. The age dependent decline in androgens is associated with changes in body composition for men and women, such as a lower percentage of muscle mass and an increase in body fat, e.g., sarcopenia. In this regard, modulation of the AR gene can have an impact on the physiological effects associated with androgen production. However, the effectiveness of known modulators of steroid receptors is often tempered by their undesired side-effect profile, particularly during long-term administration. For example, the administration of synthetic androgens has been associated with liver damage, prostate cancer, adverse effects on male sexual function and adverse effects associated with cardiovascular and erythropoietic function.

Numerous synthetically-derived steroidal and non-steroidal agonists and antagonists have been described for the members of the SB-NHR family. Many of these agonist and antagonist ligands are used clinically in man to treat a variety of medical conditions. RU486 (mifepristone) is an example of a synthetic antagonist of the PR, which is utilized as a birth control agent (Vegeto et al., *Cell* 69: 703-713 (1992)). Flutamide is an example of an antagonist of the AR, which is utilized for the treatment of prostate cancer

(Neri et al, *Endo.* **91**, 427-437 (1972)). Tamoxifen is an example of a tissue-selective modulator of the ER function, that is used in the treatment of breast cancer (Smigel *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.* **90**, 647-648 (1998)). Tamoxifen can function as an antagonist of the ER in breast tissue while acting as an agonist of the ER in bone (Grese et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **94**, 14105-14110 (1997)). Because of the tissue-selective effects seen for Tamoxifen, this agent, and agents like it, are referred to as tissue-selective estrogen receptor modulators. In addition to synthetically-derived non-endogenous ligands, non-endogenous ligands for NHR's can be obtained from food sources (Regal et al., *Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. Med.* **223**, 372-378 (2000) and Hempstock et al., *J. Med. Food* **2**, 267-269 (1999)). The flavanoid phytoestrogens are an example of an unnatural ligand for SB-NHR's that are readily obtained from a food source such as soy (Quella et al., *J. Clin. Oncol.* **18**, 1068-1074 (2000) and Banz et al., *J. Med. Food* **2**, 271-273 (1999)). The ability to modulate the transcriptional activity of an individual NHR by the addition of a small molecule ligand, makes these receptors ideal targets for the development of pharmaceutical agents for a variety of disease states.

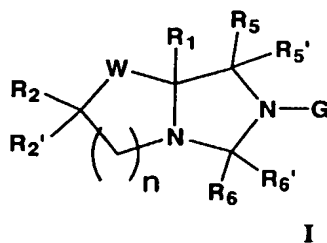
As mentioned above, non-natural ligands can be synthetically engineered to serve as modulators of the function of NHR's. In the case of SB-NHR's, engineering of an unnatural ligand can include the identification of a core structure which mimics the natural steroid core system. This can be achieved by random screening against several SB-NHR's, or through directed approaches using the available crystal structures of a variety of NHR ligand binding domains (Bourguet et al., *Nature* **375**, 377-382 (1995), Brzozowski, et al., *Nature* **389**, 753-758 (1997), Shiau et al., *Cell* **95**, 927-937 (1998) and Tanenbaum et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* **95**, 5998-6003 (1998)). Differential substitution about such a steroid mimic core can provide agents with selectivity for one receptor versus another. In addition, such modifications can be employed to obtain agents with agonist or antagonist activity for a particular SB-NHR. Differential substitution about the steroid

mimic core can result in the formation of a series of high affinity agonists and antagonists with specificity for, for example, ER versus PR versus AR versus GR versus MR. Such an approach of differential substitution has been reported, for example, for quinoline based modulators of steroid NHRs in  
5 Hamann et. al., *J. Med. Chem.*, 41, 623 (1998); Hamann et. al., *J. Med. Chem.* 42, 210 (1999); WO 9749709; US 5696133; US 5696130; US 5696127; US 5693647; US 5693646; US 5688810; US 5688808 and WO 9619458, all incorporated herein by reference.

Accordingly, identification of compounds which have good specificity  
10 for one or more steroid receptors, but which have reduced or no cross-reactivity for other steroid or intracellular receptors, would be of significant value in the treatment of male and female hormone-responsive diseases. There is, therefore, a need in the art for the identification of selective modulators of the steroid binding nuclear hormone receptors, particularly non-steroidal, non-toxic  
15 tissue selective androgen receptor modulators, which activate the androgen receptor in skeletal muscle while demonstrating limited or neutral effect on other androgen responsive (e.g., prostate) tissues.

### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

20 In accordance with illustrative embodiments and demonstrating features of the present invention, compounds are provided which are capable of modulating the function of a nuclear hormone receptor. Preferably the compounds are selective androgen receptor modulators, and have the general formula I



wherein

$R_1$  is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen (H), alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl,  $CO_2R_4$ ,  $CONR_4R_4'$  and  $CH_2OR_4$ ;

5  $R_2$  and  $R_2'$  are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen (H),  $OR_3$ ,  $SR_3$ , halo,  $NHR_3$ ,  $NHCO_2R_4$ ,  $NHCONR_4R_4'$  and  $NHSO_2R_4$ ;

$R_3$  in each functional group is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen (H), alkyl or substituted alkyl,  $CHF_2$ ,  $CF_3$  and  $COR_4$ ;

10  $R_4$  and  $R_4'$  in each functional group are each independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen(H), alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl, and heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl;

15  $R_5$  and  $R_5'$  are each independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen(H), alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl, and heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl, wherein at least one of  $R_5$  and  $R_5'$  is hydrogen, or  $R_5$  and  $R_5'$  taken  
20 together can form a double bond with oxygen (O), sulfur (S),  $NR_7$  or  $CR_7R_7'$ ;

$R_6$  and  $R_6'$  are each independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen(H), alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl, and heteroaryl or substituted  
25 heteroaryl, wherein at least one of  $R_6$  and  $R_6'$  is hydrogen, or  $R_6$  and  $R_6'$  taken together can form a double bond with oxygen (O), sulfur (S),  $NR_7$  or  $CR_7R_7'$ ;

$R_7$  and  $R_7'$  in each functional group are each independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen(H),  $OR_4$ , alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or

substituted cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl and heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl

G is an aryl, heterocyclo or heteroaryl group, wherein said group is mono- or polycyclic, and which is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halo, CN, CF<sub>3</sub>, OR<sub>4</sub>, CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>4</sub>, NR<sub>4</sub>R<sub>4</sub>', CONR<sub>4</sub>R<sub>4</sub>', CH<sub>2</sub>OR<sub>4</sub>, alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl and heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl;

W is selected from the group consisting of (CR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>6</sub>'), C(R<sub>6</sub>)OR<sub>3</sub>, C(R<sub>6</sub>)(NR<sub>4</sub>R<sub>4</sub>'), and

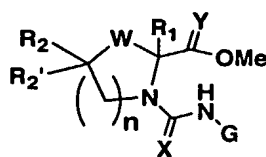
n is an integer of 1 or 2,

with the proviso that when R<sub>5</sub> and R<sub>5</sub>' and/or R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>6</sub>' are taken together to form a double bond with CR<sub>7</sub>R<sub>7</sub>', then where either R<sub>7</sub> or R<sub>7</sub>' is OR<sub>4</sub>,

R<sub>4</sub> is not hydrogen.

The definition of formula I above includes of all prodrug esters, stereoisomers and pharmaceutically acceptable salts of formula I.

Further embodiments of the present invention include compounds of the formula Ih



Ih

wherein

R<sub>1</sub> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen (H), alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>4</sub>, CONR<sub>4</sub>R<sub>4</sub>' and CH<sub>2</sub>OR<sub>4</sub>;

$R_2$  and  $R_2'$  are each independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen (H),  $OR_3$ ,  $SR_3$ , halo,  $NHR_3$ ,  $NHCO_2R_4$ ,  $NHCONR_4R_4'$  and  $NHSO_2R_4$ ;

$R_3$  in each functional group is independently selected from the group  
5 consisting of hydrogen (H), alkyl or substituted alkyl,  $CHF_2$ ,  $CF_3$  and  $COR_4$ ;

$R_4$  and  $R_4'$  in each functional group are each independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen(H), alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl, and  
10 heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl;

$R_6$  and  $R_6'$  are each independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen(H), alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl, and heteroaryl or substituted  
15 heteroaryl, wherein at least one of  $R_6$  and  $R_6'$  is hydrogen, or  $R_6$  and  $R_6'$  taken together can form a double bond with oxygen (O), sulfur (S),  $NR_7$  or  $CR_7R_7'$ ;

X and Y are each independently oxygen (O) or sulfur (S);

G is an aryl, heterocyclo or heteroaryl group, wherein said group is mono- or polycyclic, and which is optionally substituted with one or more  
20 substituents selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halo, CN,  $CF_3$ ,  $OR_4$ ,  $CO_2R_4$ ,  $NR_4R_4'$ ,  $CONR_4R_4'$ ,  $CH_2OR_4$ , alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl and heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl; and

25 W is selected from the group consisting of  $(CR_6R_6')$ ,  $C(R_6)OR_3$ ,  $C(R_6)(NR_4R_4')$ , and

n is an integer of 1 or 2.

The definition of formula Ih above is inclusive of all prodrug esters, stereoisomers and pharmaceutically acceptable salts of formula Ih.



The compounds of formula I and formula Ih modulate the function of the nuclear hormone receptors, particularly the androgen receptor, and include compounds which are, for example, selective agonists, partial agonists, antagonists or partial antagonists of the androgen receptor. Preferably the compounds of formula I possess activity as agonists of the androgen receptor and may be used in the treatment of diseases or disorders associated with androgen receptor activity, such as maintenance of muscle strength and function (e.g., in the elderly); reversal or prevention of frailty or age-related functional decline ("ARFD") in the elderly (e.g., sarcopenia); prevention of catabolic side effects of glucocorticoids; prevention and treatment of reduced bone density or growth (e.g., osteoporosis and osteopenia); treatment of chronic fatigue syndrome (CFS); chronic myalgia; treatment of acute fatigue syndrome and muscle loss following elective surgery (e.g., post-surgical rehabilitation); acceleration of wound healing; accelerating bone fracture repair (such as accelerating the recovery of hip fracture patients); treatment of wasting secondary to fractures and wasting in connection with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), chronic liver disease, AIDS, weightlessness, cancer cachexia, burn and trauma recovery, chronic catabolic state (e.g., coma), eating disorders (e.g., anorexia) and chemotherapy.

The present invention provides for compounds of formula I and Ih, pharmaceutical compositions employing such compounds and for methods of using such compounds. In particular, the present invention provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formula I, Ih or both, alone or in combination with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

Further, in accordance with the present invention, a method is provided for preventing, inhibiting or treating the progression or onset of diseases or disorders associated with nuclear hormone receptors, particularly, the androgen receptor, such as the diseases or disorders defined above and hereinafter,

wherein a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formula I, Ih or both, is administered to a mammalian, i.e., human, patient in need of treatment.

The compounds of the invention can be used alone, in combination with other compounds of the present invention, or in combination with one or more  
5 other agent(s) active in the therapeutic areas described herein.

In addition, a method is provided for preventing, inhibiting or treating the diseases as defined above and hereinafter, wherein a therapeutically effective amount of a combination of a compound of formula I, Ih or both, and another type of therapeutic agent, is administered to a human patient in need of  
10 treatment.

Preferred are compounds of formula I where  $R_5$  and  $R_5'$  are hydrogen or are taken together form a double bond with oxygen (O) or sulfur (S); and

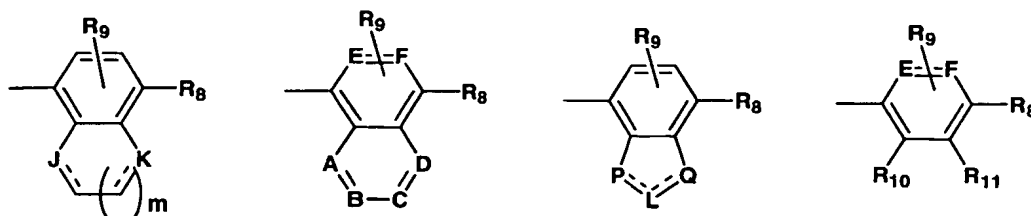
$R_6$  and  $R_6'$  are taken together form a double bond with oxygen (O) or sulfur (S).

15 Additional preferred embodiments include are compounds of formula I and Ih wherein

$R_1$  is hydrogen (H) or alkyl; and

$R_2$  is hydroxyl (OH).

20 Further preferred embodiments include compounds of formula I and Ih where G is selected from:



wherein

$R_8$ ,  $R_9$ ,  $R_{10}$  and  $R_{11}$  in each functional group are each independently  
25 selected from the group consisting of hydrogen (H),  $\text{NO}_2$ , CN,  $\text{CF}_3$ ,  $\text{OR}_4$ ,  $\text{CO}_2\text{R}_4$ ,  $\text{NR}_4\text{R}_4'$ ,  $\text{CONR}_4\text{R}_4'$ ,  $\text{CH}_2\text{OR}_4$ , alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted

cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl and heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl;

A to F is each independently selected from N or CR<sub>1</sub>;

J, K, L, P and Q are each independently selected from NR<sub>12</sub>, O, S, SO,  
5 SO<sub>2</sub> or CR<sub>12</sub>R<sub>12</sub>';

R<sub>12</sub> and R<sub>12</sub>' in each functional group are each independently selected from a bond or R<sub>1</sub>; and

m is an integer of 0 or 1.

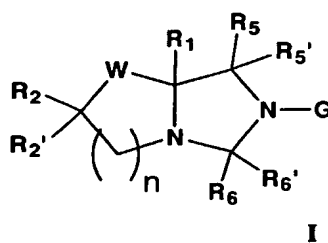
Preferred are compounds of formula I and Ih where R<sub>8</sub> is CN.

10

The present invention also provides processes for preparing some compounds of the invention.

### DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

15 [1] Thus, in a first embodiment, the present invention provides for a pharmaceutical composition capable of modulating the androgen receptor comprising a compound of the formula I



20 wherein

R<sub>1</sub> is selected from hydrogen (H), alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>4</sub>, CONR<sub>4</sub>R<sub>4</sub>' and CH<sub>2</sub>OR<sub>4</sub>;

R<sub>2</sub> and R<sub>2</sub>' are each independently selected from hydrogen (H), alkyl,  
25 substituted alkyl, OR<sub>3</sub>, SR<sub>3</sub>, halo, NHR<sub>4</sub>, NHCOR<sub>4</sub>, NHCO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>4</sub>, NHCONR<sub>4</sub>R<sub>4</sub>' and NHSO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>4</sub>;

and at least one of  $R_2$  and  $R_2'$  is H or alkyl, with the exception that  $R_2$  and  $R_2'$  can both be  $OR_3$  when  $R_3$  is not H;

$R_3$  in each functional group is independently selected from hydrogen (H), alkyl or substituted alkyl,  $CHF_2$ ,  $CF_3$  and  $COR_4$ ;

5  $R_4$  and  $R_4'$  in each functional group are each independently selected from hydrogen(H), alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl, and heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl;

10  $R_5$  and  $R_5'$  are each independently selected from hydrogen(H), alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl, and heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl, wherein at least one of  $R_5$  and  $R_5'$  is hydrogen, or  $R_5$  and  $R_5'$  taken together can form a double bond  
15 with oxygen (O), sulfur (S),  $NR_7$  or  $CR_7R_7'$ ;

$R_6$  and  $R_6'$  are each independently selected from hydrogen(H), alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl, and heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl, wherein at least one of  
20  $R_6$  and  $R_6'$  is hydrogen, or  $R_6$  and  $R_6'$  taken together can form a double bond with oxygen (O), sulfur (S),  $NR_7$  or  $CR_7R_7'$ ;

$R_7$  and  $R_7'$  in each functional group are each independently selected from hydrogen(H),  $OR_4$ , alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl,  
25 arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl and heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl;

G is an aryl, heterocyclo or heteroaryl group, wherein said group is mono- or polycyclic, and which is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from hydrogen, halo, CN,  $CF_3$ ,  $OR_4$ ,  $CO_2R_4$ ,  $NR_4R_4'$ ,  
30  $CONR_4R_4'$ ,  $CH_2OR_4$ , alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl,

alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl and heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl; and

W is selected from  $(\text{CR}_6\text{R}_6')$ ,  $\text{C}(\text{R}_6)\text{OR}_3$ ,  $\text{C}(\text{R}_6)(\text{NR}_4\text{R}_4')$ ,

5 n is an integer of 1 or 2;

including all prodrug esters, pharmaceutically acceptable salts and stereoisomers thereof,

with the following provisos:

(a) when  $\text{R}_5$  and  $\text{R}_5'$  and/or  $\text{R}_6$  and  $\text{R}_6'$  form a double bond with  $\text{CR}_7\text{R}_7'$ ,  
10 when either  $\text{R}_7$  or  $\text{R}_7'$  is  $\text{OR}_4$ ,  $\text{R}_4$  is not hydrogen;

(b) excluding compounds where the following occur simultaneously:

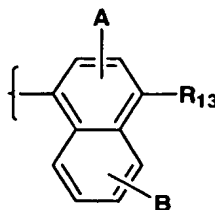
$\text{R}_2$  or  $\text{R}_2'$  are hydrogen,  $\text{OR}_3$ , halo,  $\text{NHCOR}_4$ ,  $\text{NHCO}_2\text{R}_4$ ,  $\text{NHCONR}_4\text{R}_4'$  or  $\text{NHSO}_2\text{R}_4$ ;

$\text{R}_5$  and  $\text{R}_5'$  are hydrogen or form a double bond with oxygen or sulfur;

15  $\text{R}_6$  and  $\text{R}_6'$  are hydrogen, alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl, or heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl, wherein at least one of  $\text{R}_6$  and  $\text{R}_6'$  is hydrogen, or  $\text{R}_6$  and  $\text{R}_6'$  taken together form a double bond with oxygen (O), sulfur (S) or  $\text{NR}_7$ ;

20  $\text{R}_7$  is hydrogen, alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl, or heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl; and

G has the following structure:



25

wherein

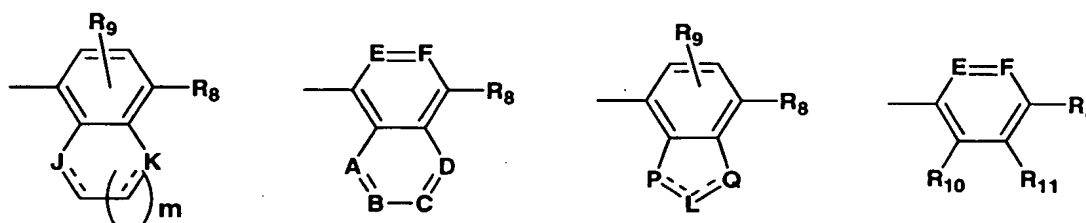
$R_{13}$  is selected from hydrogen (H), cyano (-CN), nitro (-NO<sub>2</sub>), halo, heterocyclo, OR<sub>14</sub>, CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>15</sub>, CONHR<sub>15</sub>, COR<sub>15</sub>, S(O)<sub>p</sub>R<sub>15</sub>, SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>15</sub>R<sub>15</sub>', NHCOR<sub>15</sub> and NHSO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>15</sub>;

$R_{14}$  in each functional group is independently selected from hydrogen (H), alkyl or substituted alkyl, CHF<sub>2</sub>, CF<sub>3</sub> and COR<sub>15</sub>;

$R_{15}$  and  $R_{15}'$  in each functional group are each independently selected from hydrogen(H), alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl or substituted heterocycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl, heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl and -CN;

A and B are each independently selected from hydrogen (H), halo, cyano(-CN), nitro(-NO<sub>2</sub>), alkyl or substituted alkyl and OR<sub>14</sub>; and  
p is an integer from 0 to 2.

[2] In a preferred embodiment, the present invention provides for the compound as defined in claim 1 wherein G is selected from:



wherein

$R_8$ ,  $R_9$ ,  $R_{10}$  and  $R_{11}$  are each independently selected from hydrogen (H), NO<sub>2</sub>, CN, CF<sub>3</sub>, OR<sub>4</sub>, CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>4</sub>, NR<sub>4</sub>R<sub>4</sub>', CONR<sub>4</sub>R<sub>4</sub>', CH<sub>2</sub>OR<sub>4</sub>, alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl and heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl;

A to F is each independently selected from N or CR<sub>9</sub>;

J, K, L, P and Q are each independently selected from NR<sub>12</sub>, O, S, SO, SO<sub>2</sub> or CR<sub>12</sub>R<sub>12</sub>';

$R_{12}$  and  $R_{12}'$  in each functional group are each independently selected from a bond or  $R_1$ ; and

$m$  is an integer of 0 or 1.

- 5 [3] In a more preferred embodiment, the present invention provides the compound as defined in claim 2 wherein

$R_1$  is hydrogen (H) or alkyl;

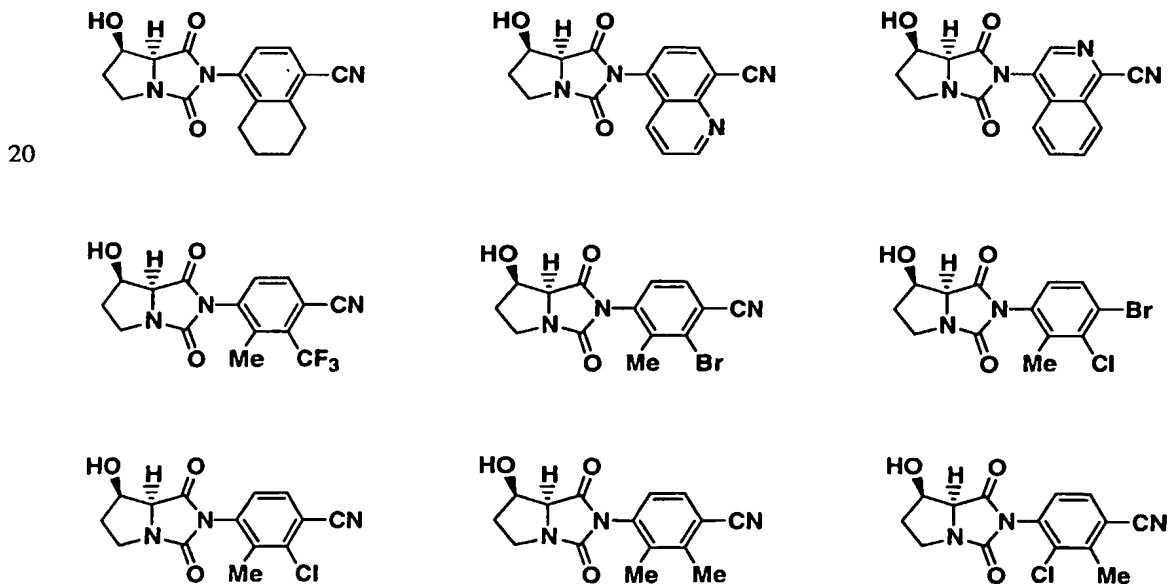
$R_2$  or  $R_2'$  is hydroxyl (OH);

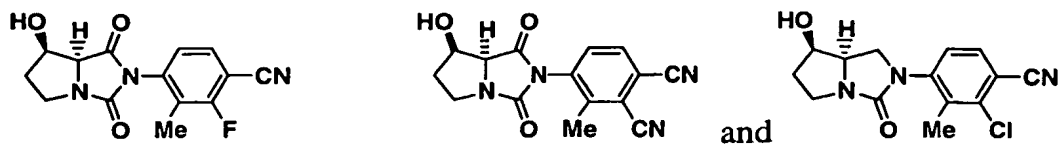
- 10  $R_5$  and  $R_5'$  are hydrogen or are taken together form a double bond with oxygen (O) or sulfur (S); and

$R_6$  and  $R_6'$  are taken together form a double bond with oxygen (O) or sulfur (S).

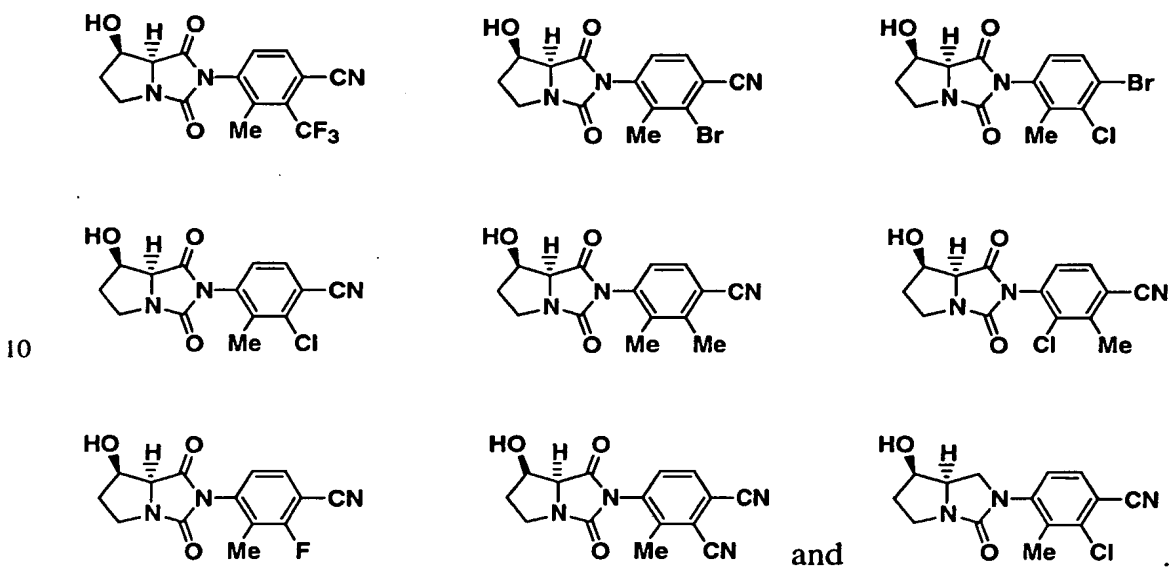
- 15 [4] In a more preferred embodiment, the present invention provides the compound as defined in claim 2 wherein  $R_8$  is CN.

- [5] In a more preferred embodiment, the present invention provides the compound as defined in claim 1 selected from:

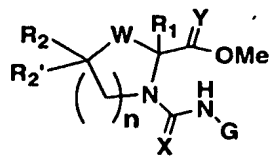




- 5 [6] In a more preferred embodiment, the present invention provides the compound as defined in claim 1 selected from:



- 15 [7] In a second embodiment, the present invention provides for a compound of formula Ih



Ih

wherein



$R_1$  is selected from hydrogen (H), alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl,  $CO_2R_4$ ,  $CONR_4R_4'$  and  $CH_2OR_4$ ;

$R_2$  and  $R_2'$  are each independently selected from hydrogen (H), alkyl, substituted alkyl,  $OR_3$ ,  $SR_3$ , halo,  $NHR_4$ ,  $NHCOR_4$ ,  $NHCO_2R_4$ ,  $NHCONR_4R_4'$  and  $NHSO_2R_4$ ;

and at least one of  $R_2$  and  $R_2'$  is H or alkyl, with the exception that  $R_2$  and  $R_2'$  can both be  $OR_3$  when  $R_3$  is not H;

$R_3$  in each functional group is independently selected from hydrogen (H), alkyl or substituted alkyl,  $CHF_2$ ,  $CF_3$  and  $COR_4$ ;

$R_4$  and  $R_4'$  in each functional group are each independently selected from hydrogen(H), alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl, and heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl;

X and Y are each independently oxygen (O) or sulfur (S);

G is an aryl, heterocyclo or heteroaryl group, wherein said group is mono- or polycyclic, and which is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halo, CN,  $CF_3$ ,  $OR_4$ ,  $CO_2R_4$ ,  $NR_4R_4'$ ,  $CONR_4R_4'$ ,  $CH_2OR_4$ , alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl and heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl; and

W is selected from  $(CR_6R_6')$ ,  $C(R_6)OR_3$ ,  $C(R_6)(NR_4R_4')$ ,

n is an integer of 1 or 2;

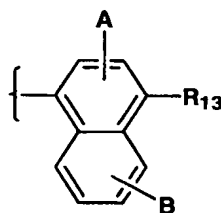
including all prodrug esters, pharmaceutically acceptable salts and stereoisomers thereof,

with the following proviso:

(a) excluding compounds where the following occur simultaneously:

$R_2$  or  $R_2'$  is hydrogen,  $OR_3$ , halo,  $NHCOR_4$ ,  $NHCO_2R_4$ ,  $NHCONR_4R_4'$  or  $NHSO_2R_4$ ; and

G has the following structure:



5 wherein

$R_{13}$  is selected from hydrogen (H), cyano (-CN), nitro (-NO<sub>2</sub>), halo, heterocyclo,  $OR_{14}$ ,  $CO_2R_{15}$ ,  $CONHR_{15}$ ,  $COR_{15}$ ,  $S(O)_pR_{15}$ ,  $SO_2NR_{15}R_{15}'$ ,  $NHCOR_{15}$  and  $NHSO_2R_{15}$ ;

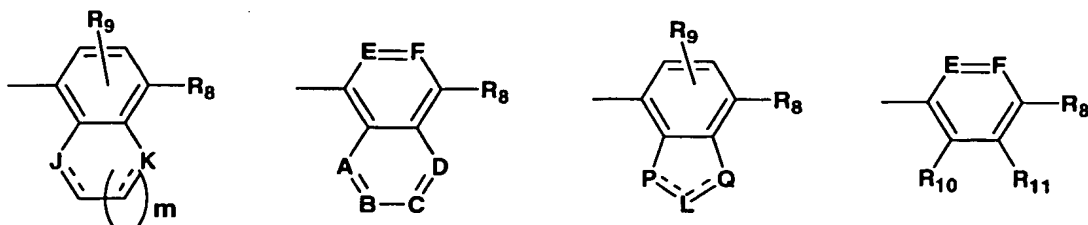
10  $R_{14}$  in each functional group is independently selected from (H), alkyl or substituted alkyl,  $CHF_2$ ,  $CF_3$  and  $COR_{15}$ ;

$R_{15}$  and  $R_{15}'$  in each functional group are each independently selected from hydrogen(H), alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl or substituted heterocycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl, heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl and -CN;

A and B are each independently selected from hydrogen (H), halo, cyano(-CN), nitro(-NO<sub>2</sub>), alkyl or substituted alkyl and  $OR_{14}$ ; and

p is an integer from 0 to 2.

20 [8] In a preferred embodiment, the present invention provides the compound as defined in claim 7 wherein G is selected from:



wherein

$R_8$ ,  $R_9$ ,  $R_{10}$  and  $R_{11}$  in each functional group are each independently selected from hydrogen (H),  $NO_2$ , CN,  $CF_3$ ,  $OR_4$ ,  $CO_2R_4$ ,  $NR_4R_4'$ ,  $CONR_4R_4'$ ,  $CH_2OR_4$ , alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl and heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl;

A to F is each independently selected from N or  $CR_9$ ;

J, K, L, P and Q are each independently selected from  $NR_{12}$ , O, S, SO,  $SO_2$  or  $CR_{12}R_{12}'$ ;

$R_{12}$  and  $R_{12}'$  in each functional group are each independently selected from a bond or  $R_1$ ; and

m is an integer of 0 or 1.

[9] In a more preferred embodiment, the present invention provides the compound as defined in claim 8 wherein

$R_1$  is hydrogen (H) or alkyl; and

$R_2$  or  $R_2'$  is hydroxyl (OH).

[10] In a more preferred embodiment, the present invention provides the compound as defined in claim 8 wherein  $R_8$  is CN.

[11] In a more preferred embodiment, the present invention provides the pharmaceutical composition as defined in claim 1 further comprising a growth promoting agent.

[12] In a more preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound as defined in claim 1 and at least one additional therapeutic agent selected from other compounds of formula I, parathyroid hormone, bisphosphonates, estrogen, testosterone, progesterone, selective estrogen receptor modulators, growth hormone

secretagogues, growth hormone, progesterone receptor modulators, anti-diabetic agents, anti-hypertensive agents, anti-inflammatory agents, anti-osteoporosis agents, anti-obesity agents, cardiac glycosides, cholesterol lowering agents, anti-depressants, anti-anxiety agents, anabolic agents, and  
5 thyroid mimetics.

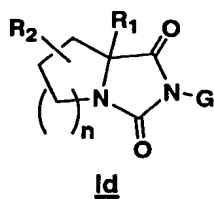
[13] In a third embodiment, the present invention provides for a method for treating or delaying the progression or onset of muscular atrophy, lipodistrophy, long-term critical illness, sarcopenia, frailty or age-related  
10 functional decline, reduced muscle strength and function, reduced bone density or growth, the catabolic side effects of glucocorticoids, chronic fatigue syndrome, bone fracture repair, acute fatigue syndrome and muscle loss following elective surgery, cachexia, chronic catabolic state, eating disorders, side effects of chemotherapy, wasting, depression, nervousness, irritability,  
15 stress, growth retardation, reduced cognitive function, male contraception, hypogonadism, Syndrome X, diabetic complications or obesity, which comprises administering to a mammalian species in need of treatment a therapeutically effective amount of a pharmaceutical composition as defined in claim 1.

20

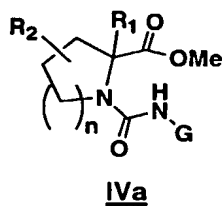
[14] In a preferred embodiment, the present invention provides for a method according to claim 13 further comprising administering, concurrently or sequentially, a therapeutically effective amount of at least one additional therapeutic agent selected from the group consisting of other compounds  
25 formula I, parathyroid hormone, bisphosphonates, estrogen, testosterone, progesterone, selective estrogen receptor modulators, growth hormone secretagogues, growth hormone, progesterone receptor modulators, anti-diabetic agents, anti-hypertensive agents, anti-inflammatory agents, anti-osteoporosis agents, anti-obesity agents, cardiac glycosides, cholesterol

lowering agents, anti-depressants, anti-anxiety agents, anabolic agents and thyroid mimetics.

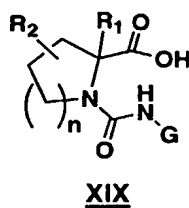
[15] In a fourth embodiment, the present invention provides for a process for  
5 preparing a compound of formula Id



which comprises hydrolyzing a compound of formula IVa  
10



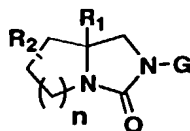
under basic conditions to give the compound of formula XIX



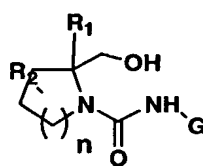
15

which is then carried on to a compound of formula Id with the use of a coupling reagent.

20 [16] A process for preparing a compound of formula Ie

Ie

which comprises optionally protecting the compound of formula IVa, when R<sub>2</sub> is OH, with a protecting group by treatment with a silylating reagent and then reduced with a  
 5 reducing agent to give a compound of formula XX

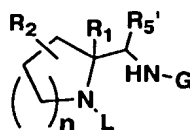
XX

which is then derivatized with a leaving group and p-toluenesulfonyl chloride and then treated with a base to give the compound of formula Ie.

10

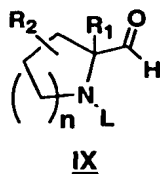
[17] In a preferred embodiment, the present invention provides for the process of claim 16 wherein the protecting group is tert-Butyldimethylsilyl; the silylating reagent is tert-Butyldimethylsilyl (chloride); the reducing agent is lithium aluminum hydride or lithium borohydride; the leaving group is Tosyl; the base is potassium tert-  
 15 butoxide.

[18] In another preferred embodiment, the present invention provides for a process for preparing a compound of formula XII ,

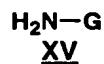
XII

20

which comprises reacting an aldehyde of formula IX

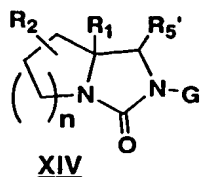


with an amine of formula XV



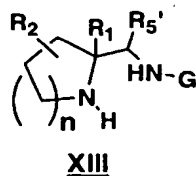
in the presence of a reducing agent to give the compound of formula XII.

[19] In a more preferred embodiment, the present invention provides for a process  
10 for preparing a compound of formula XIV



which comprises subjecting the compound of formula XII prepared by the  
process of claim 18 to N-deprotection to form a compound of formula XIII

15



and reacting the compound of formula XIII with phosgene or a phosgene equivalent  
in the presence of a base to form the compound of formula XIV.

20

The following abbreviations are employed herein:

Chiralpak® = Trademark of Chiral Technologies, Inc. Eaton, PA

- DBU = 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene  
AcOH = acetic acid  
DMPU = 1,3-dimethyl-3,4,5,6-tetrahydro-2(1*H*)-pyrimidinone  
EtOAc = ethyl acetate
- 5 HPLC = high performance liquid chromatography  
MeOH = methanol  
MS or Mass Spec = mass spectrometry  
YMC® = trademark of YMC Co, Ltd., Kyoto, Japan  
CuBr = copper(I) bromide
- 10 CuCN = copper(I) cyanide  
CsF = cesium fluoride  
Et<sub>3</sub>N = triethylamine  
DCC = 1,3-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide  
DEAD = diethyl azodicarboxylate
- 15 LDA = lithium diisopropylamide  
NMP = 1-methyl-2-pyrrolidinone  
KOH = potassium hydroxide  
Pd/C = palladium on activated charcoal  
TFA = trifluoroacetic acid
- 20 THF = tetrahydrofuran  
mp. = melting point  
min = minute(s)  
h = hour(s)  
L = liter
- 25 mL = milliliter  
μL = microliter  
g = gram(s)  
mg = milligram(s)  
mol = moles
- 30 mmol = millimole(s)



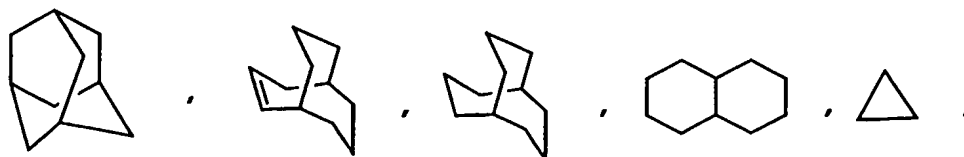
nM = nanomolar

rt = room temperature

5           The following definitions apply to the terms as used throughout this specification, unless otherwise limited in specific instances.

As used herein, the term "alkyl" denotes branched or unbranched hydrocarbon chains, preferably having about 1 to about 8 carbons, such as, methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, iso-propyl, n-butyl, sec-butyl, iso-butyl, tert-butyl, 2-methylpentyl, hexyl, isohexyl, heptyl, 4,4-dimethyl pentyl, octyl, 2,2,4-  
10 trimethylpentyl and the like. "Substituted alkyl" includes an alkyl group optionally substituted with one or more functional groups which are attached commonly to such chains, such as, hydroxyl, bromo, fluoro, chloro, iodo, mercapto or thio, cyano, alkylthio, heterocyclyl, aryl, heteroaryl, carboxyl, carbalkoyl, alkyl, alkenyl, nitro, amino, alkoxyl, amido, and the like to form  
15 alkyl groups such as trifluoro methyl, 3-hydroxyhexyl, 2-carboxypropyl, 2-fluoroethyl, carboxymethyl, cyanobutyl and the like.

Unless otherwise indicated, the term "cycloalkyl" as employed herein alone or as part of another group includes saturated or partially unsaturated  
20 (containing 1 or more double bonds) cyclic hydrocarbon groups containing 1 to 3 rings, including monocyclicalkyl, bicyclicalkyl and tricyclicalkyl, containing a total of 3 to 20 carbons forming the rings, preferably 3 to 10 carbons, forming the ring and which may be fused to 1 or 2 aromatic rings as described for aryl, which include cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl,  
25 cyclooctyl, cyclodecyl and cyclododecyl, cyclohexenyl,



“Substituted cycloalkyl” includes a cycloalkyl group optionally substituted with 1 or more substituents such as halogen, alkyl, alkoxy, hydroxy, aryl, aryloxy, arylalkyl, cycloalkyl, alkylamido, alkanoylamino, oxo, acyl, arylcarbonylamino, amino, nitro, cyano, thiol and/or alkylthio and/or any of the substituents included in the definition of "substituted alkyl."

Unless otherwise indicated, the term "alkenyl" as used herein by itself or as part of another group refers to straight or branched chain radicals of 2 to 20 carbons, preferably 2 to 12 carbons, and more preferably 2 to 8 carbons in the normal chain, which include one or more double bonds in the normal chain, such as vinyl, 2-propenyl, 3-butenyl, 2-butenyl, 4-pentenyl, 3-pentenyl, 2-hexenyl, 3-hexenyl, 2-heptenyl, 3-heptenyl, 4-heptenyl, 3-octenyl, 3-nonenyl, 4-decenyl, 3-undecenyl, 4-dodecenyl, 4,8,12-tetradecatrienyl, and the like.

“Substituted alkenyl” includes an alkenyl group optionally substituted with one or more substituents, such as the substituents included above in the definition of "substituted alkyl" and "substituted cycloalkyl."

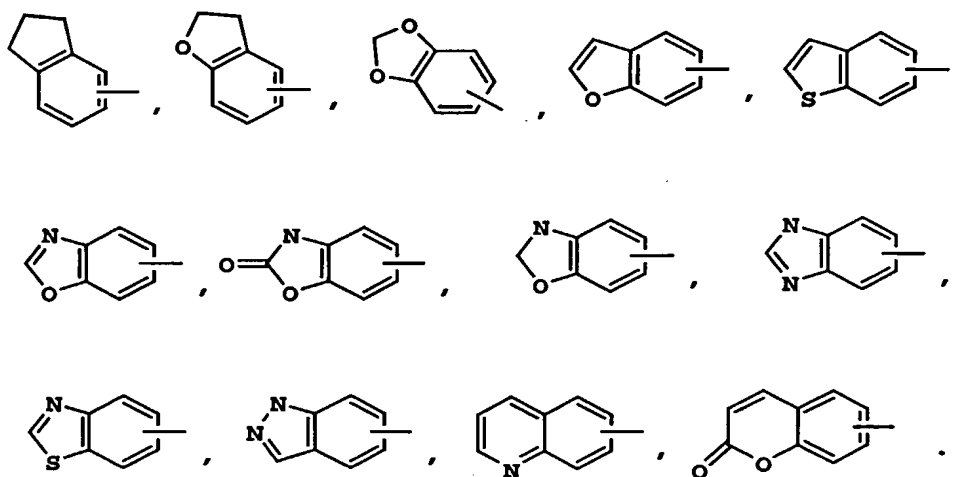
Unless otherwise indicated, the term "alkynyl" as used herein by itself or as part of another group refers to straight or branched chain radicals of 2 to 20 carbons, preferably 2 to 12 carbons and more preferably 2 to 8 carbons in the normal chain, which include one or more triple bonds in the normal chain, such as 2-propynyl, 3-butynyl, 2-butynyl, 4-pentynyl, 3-pentynyl, 2-hexynyl, 3-hexynyl, 2-heptynyl, 3-heptynyl, 4-heptynyl, 3-octynyl, 3-nonynyl, 4-decynyl, 3-undecynyl, 4-dodecynyl and the like. “Substituted alkynyl” includes an alkynyl group optionally substituted with one or more substituents, such as the substituents included above in the definition of "substituted alkyl" and "substituted cycloalkyl."

The terms “arylalkyl”, "arylalkenyl" and "arylalkynyl" as used alone or as part of another group refer to alkyl, alkenyl and alkynyl groups as described above having an aryl substituent. Representative examples of arylalkyl include, but are not limited to, benzyl, 2-phenylethyl, 3-phenylpropyl, phenethyl, benzhydryl and naphthylmethyl and the like. "Substituted arylalkyl" includes

arylalkyl groups wherein the aryl portion is optionally substituted with one or more substituents, such as the substituents included above in the definition of "substituted alkyl" and "substituted cycloalkyl."

The term "halogen" or "halo" as used herein alone or as part of another group refers to chlorine, bromine, fluorine, and iodine.

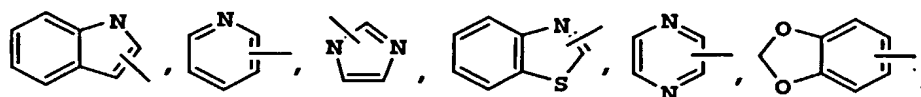
Unless otherwise indicated, the term "aryl" or "Ar" as employed herein alone or as part of another group refers to monocyclic and polycyclic aromatic groups containing 6 to 10 carbons in the ring portion (such as phenyl or naphthyl including 1-naphthyl and 2-naphthyl) and may optionally include one to three additional rings fused to a carbocyclic ring or a heterocyclic ring (such as aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or cycloheteroalkyl rings), for example



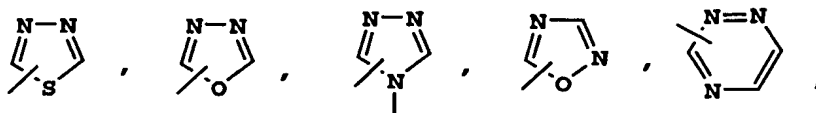
"Substituted aryl" includes an aryl group optionally substituted with one or more functional groups, such as halo, haloalkyl, alkyl, haloalkyl, alkoxy, haloalkoxy, alkenyl, trifluoromethyl, trifluoromethoxy, alkynyl, cycloalkyl-alkyl, cycloheteroalkyl, cycloheteroalkylalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, arylalkyl, aryloxy, aryloxyalkyl, arylalkoxy, alkoxycarbonyl, arylcarbonyl, arylalkenyl, aminocarbonylaryl, arylthio, arylsulfinyl, arylazo, heteroarylalkyl, heteroarylalkenyl, heteroarylheteroaryl, heteroaryloxy, hydroxy, nitro, cyano, amino, substituted amino wherein the amino includes 1 or 2 substituents (which

are alkyl, aryl or any of the other aryl compounds mentioned in the definitions),  
 thiol, alkylthio, arylthio, heteroarylthio, arylthioalkyl, alkoxyarylthio,  
 alkylcarbonyl, arylcarbonyl, alkylaminocarbonyl, arylaminocarbonyl,  
 alkoxycarbonyl, aminocarbonyl, alkylcarbonyloxy, arylcarbonyloxy,  
 5 alkylcarbonylamino, arylcarbonylamino, arylsulfinyl, arylsulfinylalkyl,  
 arylsulfonylamino or arylsulfonaminocarbonyl and/or any of the alkyl  
 substituents set out herein.

Unless otherwise indicated, the term "heteroaryl" as used herein alone  
 or as part of another group refers to a 5- or 7- membered aromatic ring which  
 10 includes 1, 2, 3 or 4 hetero atoms such as nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur and such  
 rings fused to an aryl, cycloalkyl, heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl ring (e.g.  
 benzothiophenyl, indolyl), and includes possible N-oxides. "Substituted  
 heteroaryl" includes a heteroaryl group optionally substituted with 1 to 4  
 substituents, such as the substituents included above in the definition of  
 15 "substituted alkyl" and "substituted cycloalkyl." Examples of heteroaryl  
 groups include the following:



20



and the like.

The term "heterocyclo", heterocycle or heterocyclic ring, as used herein, represents an unsubstituted or substituted stable 5- to 7-membered monocyclic ring system which may be saturated or unsaturated, and which  
5 consists of carbon atoms and from one to four heteroatoms selected from N, O or S, and wherein the nitrogen and sulfur heteroatoms may optionally be oxidized, and the nitrogen heteroatom may optionally be quaternized. The heterocyclic ring may be attached at any heteroatom or carbon atom which results in the creation of a stable structure. Examples of such heterocyclic  
10 groups include, but is not limited to, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, oxopiperazinyl, oxopiperidinyl, oxopyrrolidinyl, oxoazepinyl, azepinyl, pyrrolyl, pyrrolidinyl, furanyl, thienyl, pyrazolyl, pyrazolidinyl, imidazolyl, imidazolinyl, imidazolidinyl, pyridyl, pyrazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyridazinyl, oxazolyl, oxazolidinyl, isooxazolyl, isoxazolidinyl, morpholinyl, thiazolyl, thiazolidinyl,  
15 isothiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, tetrahydropyranyl, thiamorpholinyl, thiamorpholinyl sulfoxide, thiamorpholinyl sulfone, and oxadiazolyl.

The compounds of formula I can be present as salts, which are also within the scope of this invention. Pharmaceutically acceptable (i.e., non-toxic, physiologically acceptable) salts are preferred. If the compounds of formula I  
20 have, for example, at least one basic center, they can form acid addition salts. These are formed, for example, with strong inorganic acids, such as mineral acids, for example sulfuric acid, phosphoric acid or a hydrohalic acid, with strong organic carboxylic acids, such as alkanecarboxylic acids of 1 to 4 carbon atoms which are unsubstituted or substituted, for example, by halogen, for  
25 example acetic acid, such as saturated or unsaturated dicarboxylic acids, for example oxalic, malonic, succinic, maleic, fumaric, phthalic or terephthalic acid, such as hydroxycarboxylic acids, for example ascorbic, glycolic, lactic, malic, tartaric or citric acid, such as amino acids, (for example aspartic or glutamic acid or lysine or arginine), or benzoic acid, or with organic sulfonic  
30 acids, such as (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub>) alkyl or arylsulfonic acids which are unsubstituted or

substituted, for example by halogen, for example methyl- or *p*-toluene- sulfonic acid. Corresponding acid addition salts can also be formed having, if desired, an additionally present basic center. The compounds of formula I having at least one acid group (for example COOH) can also form salts with bases.

5 Suitable salts with bases are, for example, metal salts, such as alkali metal or alkaline earth metal salts, for example sodium, potassium or magnesium salts, or salts with ammonia or an organic amine, such as morpholine, thiomorpholine, piperidine, pyrrolidine, a mono, di or tri-lower alkylamine, for example ethyl, *tert*-butyl, diethyl, diisopropyl, triethyl, tributyl or dimethyl-  
10 propylamine, or a mono, di or trihydroxy lower alkylamine, for example mono, di or triethanolamine. Corresponding internal salts may furthermore be formed. Salts which are unsuitable for pharmaceutical uses but which can be employed, for example, for the isolation or purification of free compounds of formula I or their pharmaceutically acceptable salts, are also included.

15 Preferred salts of the compounds of formula I which contain a basic group include monohydrochloride, hydrogensulfate, methanesulfonate, phosphate or nitrate.

Preferred salts of the compounds of formula I which contain an acid group include sodium, potassium and magnesium salts and pharmaceutically  
20 acceptable organic amines.

The term "modulator" refers to a chemical compound with capacity to either enhance (e.g., "agonist" activity) or inhibit (e.g., "antagonist" activity) a functional property of biological activity or process (e.g., enzyme activity or receptor binding); such enhancement or inhibition may be contingent on the  
25 occurrence of a specific event, such as activation of a signal transduction pathway, and/or may be manifest only in particular cell types.

The term "prodrug esters" as employed herein includes esters and carbonates formed by reacting one or more hydroxyls of compounds of formula I with alkyl, alkoxy, or aryl substituted acylating agents employing procedures

known to those skilled in the art to generate acetates, pivalates, methylcarbonates, benzoates and the like.

Any compound that can be converted in vivo to provide the bioactive agent (i.e., the compound of formula I) is a prodrug within the scope and spirit  
5 of the invention.

Various forms of prodrugs are well known in the art. A comprehensive description of prodrugs and prodrug derivatives are described in:

- a.) *The Practice of Medicinal Chemistry*, Camille G. Wermuth et al., Ch 31, (Academic Press, 1996);
- 10 b.) *Design of Prodrugs*, edited by H. Bundgaard, (Elsevier, 1985);
- c.) *A Textbook of Drug Design and Development*, P. Krosgaard-Larson and H. Bundgaard, eds. Ch 5, pgs 113 – 191 (Harwood Academic Publishers, 1991).

Said references are incorporated herein by reference.

15 An administration of a therapeutic agent of the invention includes administration of a therapeutically effective amount of the agent of the invention. The term "therapeutically effective amount" as used herein refers to an amount of a therapeutic agent to treat or prevent a condition treatable by administration of a composition of the invention. That amount is the amount  
20 sufficient to exhibit a detectable therapeutic or preventative or ameliorative effect. The effect may include, for example, treatment or prevention of the conditions listed herein. The precise effective amount for a subject will depend upon the subject's size and health, the nature and extent of the condition being treated, recommendations of the treating physician, and the therapeutics or  
25 combination of therapeutics selected for administration. Thus, it is not useful to specify an exact effective amount in advance.

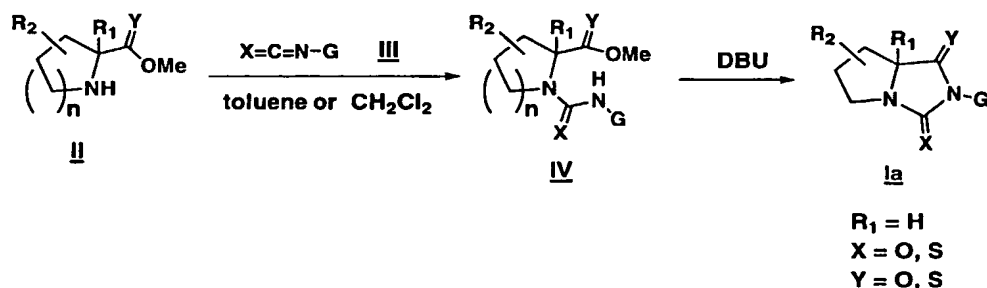
All stereoisomers of the compounds of the instant invention are contemplated, either in admixture or in pure or substantially pure form. The compounds of the present invention can have asymmetric centers at any of the  
30 carbon atoms including any one of the R substituents. Consequently,

compounds of formula I can exist in enantiomeric or diastereomeric forms or in mixtures thereof. The processes for preparation can utilize racemates, enantiomers or diastereomers as starting materials. When diastereomeric or enantiomeric products are prepared, they can be separated by conventional methods for example, chromatographic, chiral HPLC or fractional crystallization.

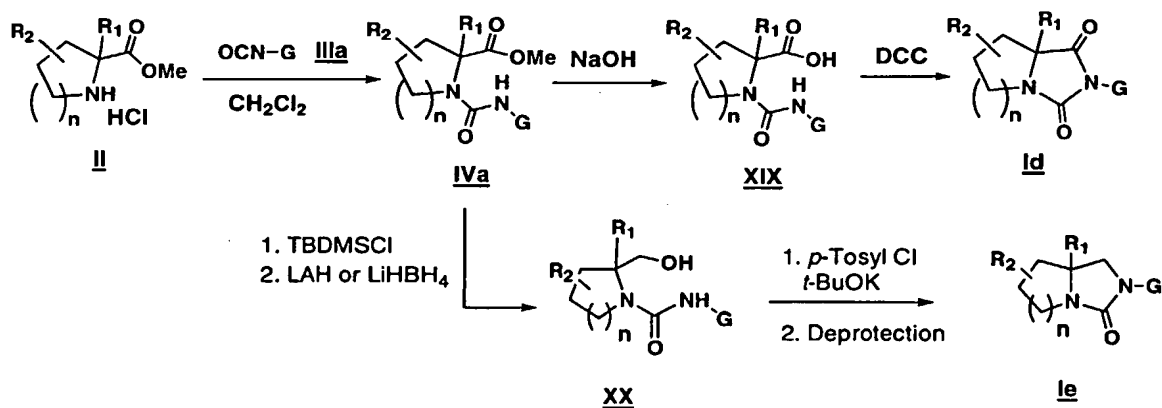
The compounds of formula I of the invention can be prepared as shown in the following reaction schemes and description thereof, as well as relevant published literature procedures that may be used by one skilled in the art.

Exemplary reagents and procedures for these reactions appear hereinafter and in the working Examples.

**Scheme I**



**Scheme Ia**



As illustrated in Scheme I, compounds of formula Ia can be prepared from suitably protected intermediates of formula II. Intermediates of formula



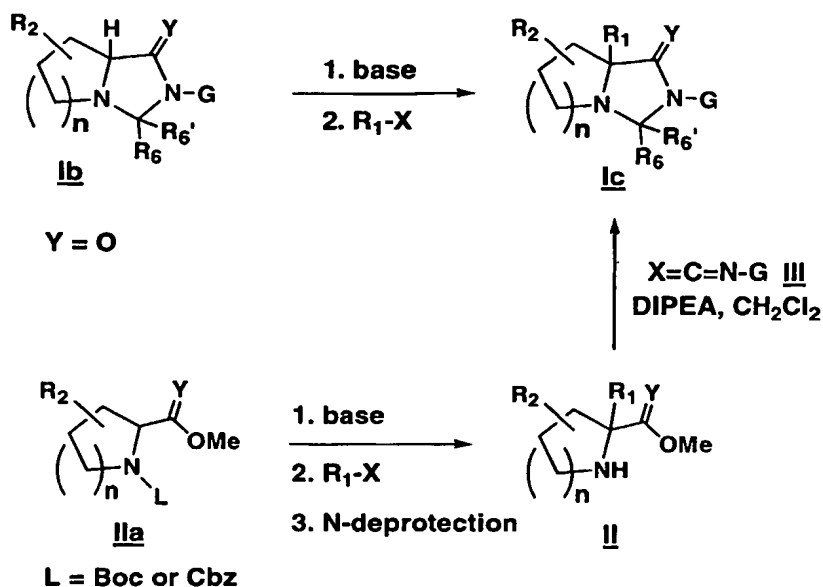
**II** can be obtained commercially, can be prepared by methods known in the literature or can be readily prepared by one skilled in the art. Treatment of **II** with an intermediate of formula **III** yields an intermediate of formula of **IV**. The intermediates of formula **III** can be obtained, for example, from

5 commercially available isocyanates and thioisocyanates and or can be readily prepared by one skilled in the art. The intermediate of formula **IV** can be treated with a base, such as DBU, to yield a compound of formula **Ia**. Compounds of formula **Ia** represent compounds of formula **I** wherein  $R_1$  is H,  $R_5$  and  $R_5'$  are taken together to form a double bond with O or S and  $R_6$  and  $R_6'$

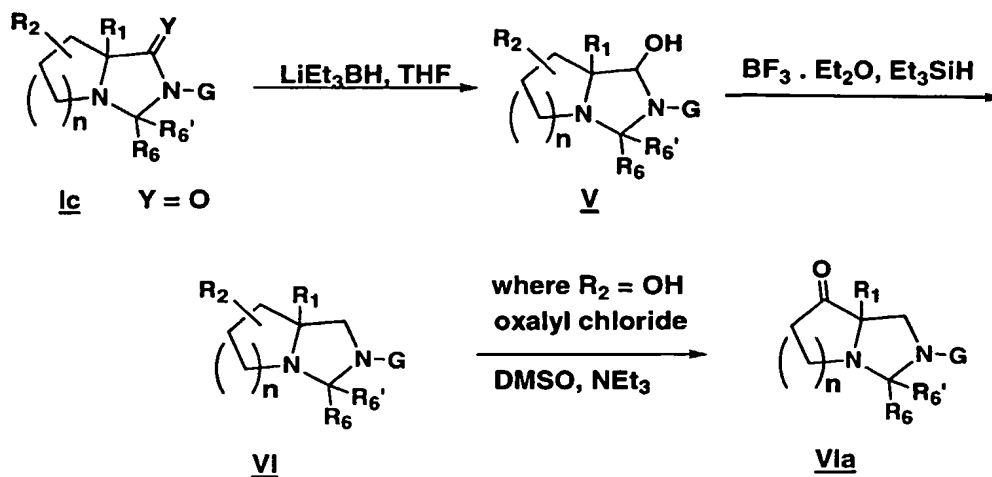
10 are taken together to form a double bond with O or S. As illustrated in Scheme **Ia**, compounds of formula **Id** and **Ie** can be prepared from suitably protected intermediates of formula **II** by reacting with a compound of formula **IIIa** to form an intermediate of formula **IVa**. An intermediate of the formula **IVa** can be hydrolysed under basic conditions to give an intermediate of the formula

15 **XIX** and then carried on to a compound of the formula **Id** with the use of a suitable coupling reagents such as, for example DCC. Alternatively, an intermediate of the formula **IVa** can be optionally protected (where  $R_2 = OH$ ) with a suitable protecting group such as TBS by treatment with a silylating reagent such as TBDMSCl, and then reduced with a suitable reducing agent

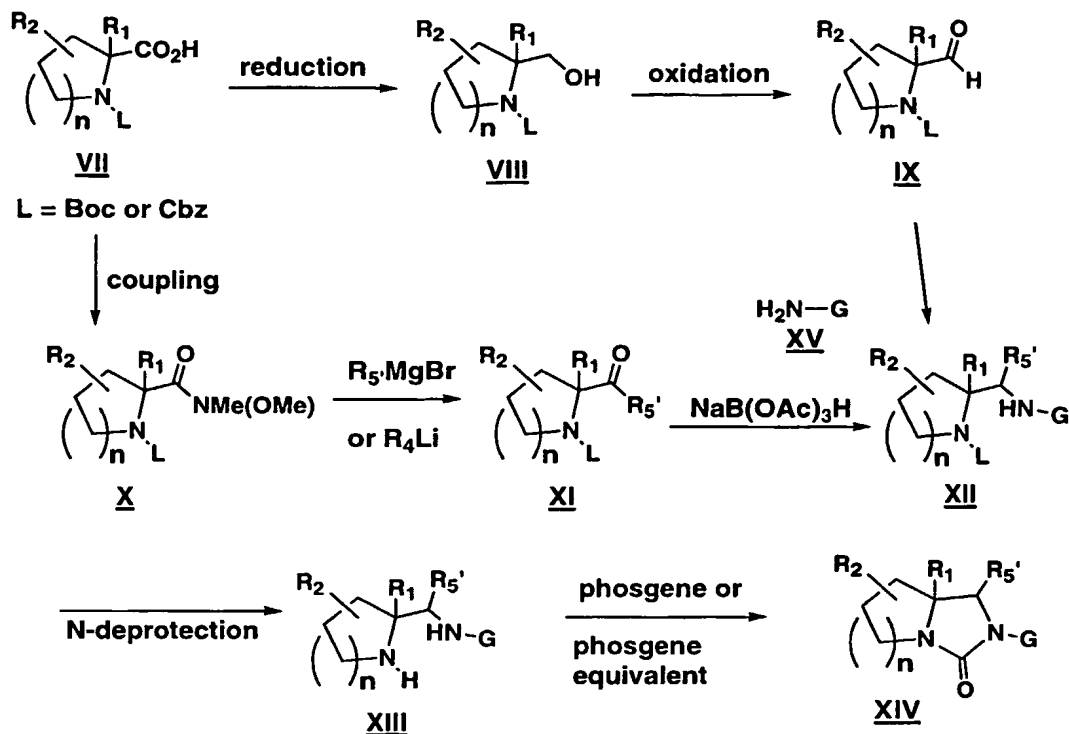
20 such as, for example LAH or  $LiBH_4$  to give an intermediate of the formula **XX**. An intermediate of the formula **XX** can then be derivatized on the primary hydroxyl functionality with a suitable leaving group such as Tosyl, with, for example, *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride, followed by base treatment such as with potassium *tert*-butoxide to give a compound of the formula **Ie**.

**Scheme II**

As illustrated in Scheme II, a compound of formula **Ib**, wherein  $R_1$  is H, can be converted to a compound of formula **Ic** wherein  $R_1$  is a functional group other than H, as defined herein, by treatment with a base such as LDA and an alkyl halide, such as iodomethane, preferably in a solvent such as THF at low temperatures (e.g.,  $-78^\circ\text{C}$ ). Compounds of formula **Ic** represent compounds of formula **I** wherein  $R_1$  is a functional group other than H and  $R_5$  and  $R_5'$  are taken together to form a double bond with O. Optionally, subsequent reaction of compounds of formula **Ic** with a Lawesson's Reagent will convert Y from oxygen (O) to sulfur (S).

**Scheme III**

- As illustrated in Scheme III, a compound of formula **Ic** can be converted by treatment with a reducing agent, such as  $\text{LiEt}_3\text{BH}$ , preferably in a solvent such as THF at low temperatures ( $< -40^\circ\text{C}$ ) to give an intermediate **V**.
- 5 Intermediate **V** is subsequently treated further with  $\text{Et}_3\text{SiH}$  in the presence of boron trifluoride diethyl etherate in a halogenated solvent such as 1,2-dichloroethane at low temperatures ( $< 0^\circ\text{C}$ ) to yield a compound of formula **VI**. Compounds of formula **VI** represent compounds of formula **I** wherein  $\text{R}_5$  and  $\text{R}_5'$  are hydrogen. A compound of formula **VI** can be oxidized to a
- 10 compound of formula **VIa** using standard conditions of known oxidation methods, such as, for example, Swern or Dess-Martin.

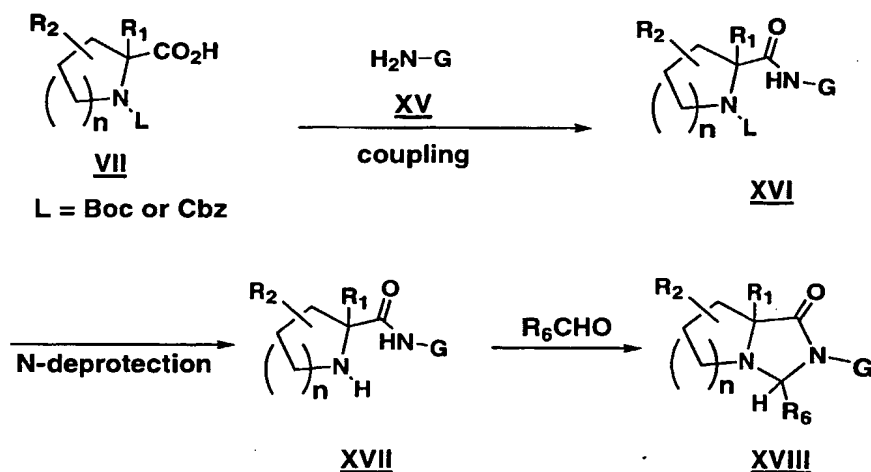
**Scheme IV**

Scheme IV describes a method for preparing compounds of formula XIV from N-protected amino acids of formula VII, which can be obtained commercially or can be prepared by methods known in the literature or can be readily prepared by one skilled in the art. An intermediate of formula VII is treated with a reducing agent, such as borane, to form an alcohol intermediate VIII, which can be oxidized to an aldehyde intermediate IX. Similarly, an intermediate of formula VII can be coupled to N,O-dimethylhydroxylamine to form amide X, which can be treated with a Grignard reagent or an organolithium reagent to form an alkylketone XI. The aldehyde intermediate IX or an alkylketone XI, can be reacted with an amine of formula XV in the presence of a reducing agent, such as sodium triacetoxyborohydride to give an intermediate of formula XII. Removal of N-protecting group (L) can be achieved by methods known in the literature or by one skilled in the art to provide an intermediate of formula XIII. The intermediate of formula XIII can be treated with phosgene or phosgene equivalent in the presence of a base,

such as triethylamine, to provide a compound of formula **XIV**. Compounds of formula **XIV** represent compounds of formula **I** wherein  $R_6$  and  $R_6'$  are taken together to form a double bond with oxygen and  $R_5$  is hydrogen and  $R_5'$  is as defined herein. In the alternative, Scheme IV may be utilized to provide

5 compounds of formula **I** wherein  $R_5'$  is hydrogen and  $R_5$  is as defined herein. Optionally, subsequent reaction of compounds of formula **XIV** with a Lawesson's Reagent will provide compounds of formula **I** wherein  $R_6$  and  $R_6'$  are taken together to form a double bond with sulfur (S).

### Scheme V



10

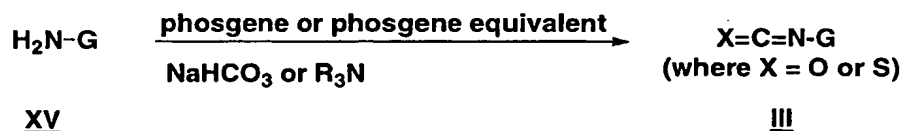
As illustrated in Scheme V, an intermediate of formula **VII** as described in Scheme IV can be coupled to an amine **XV** using a coupling reagent, such as those described in "The Practice of Peptide Synthesis" (Spring-Verlag, 2<sup>nd</sup> Ed.,

15 Bodanszy, Miklos, 1993), to yield an amide intermediate of formula **XVI**. Removal of N-protecting group can be achieved by methods known in the literature or by one skilled in the art to provide an intermediate of formula **XVII**. The intermediate of formula **XVII** is treated with an aldehyde ( $R_6\text{CHO}$ ) in suitable solvent (such as ethanol, methanol, THF or  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ ), with or without

20 the presence of a base, such as  $\text{K}_2\text{CO}_3$ ,  $\text{NaOH}$  or  $\text{DBU}$ , or a weak acid, such as

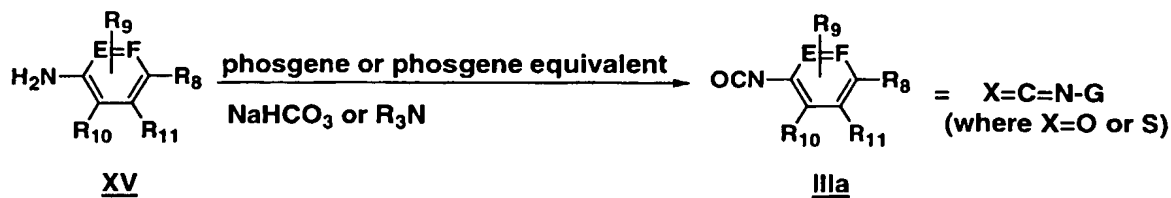
HOAc, to give a compound of formula **XVIII**. Aldehydes of formula  $R_6\text{CHO}$  can be obtained from commercial sources, can be prepared by methods known in the literature or readily prepared by one skilled in the art. Compounds of formula **XVIII** represent compounds of formula **I** wherein  $R_5$  and  $R_5'$  are taken together to form a double bond with oxygen (O) and  $R_6'$  is hydrogen and  $R_6$  is as defined herein. In the alternative, Scheme V may be utilized to provide compounds of formula **I** wherein  $R_6$  is hydrogen and  $R_6'$  is as defined herein. Optionally, subsequent reaction of compounds of formula **XVIII** with a Lawesson's Reagent will provide compounds of formula **I** wherein  $R_5$  and  $R_5'$  are taken together to form a double bond with sulfur (S).

#### Scheme VI



Scheme VI describes a method to prepare isocyanates of general formula **III** wherein intermediates **XV** are treated with phosgene or a phosgene like reagent in the presence of an inorganic base such as sodium bicarbonate, or a organic base such as diisopropylethylamine in a solvent such as dichloromethane to afford an isocyanate of formula **III**.

#### Scheme VIa



For example, Scheme VIa describes a method for preparing isocyanates of general formula **IIIa**. Substituted aryl or heteroaryl amines of formula **XV**

are treated with phosgene or a phosgene like reagent in the presence of an inorganic base such as sodium bicarbonate, or a organic base such as diisopropylethylamine in a solvent such as dichloromethane to afford an isocyanate of formula **IIIa**. Substituted aryl or heteroaryl amines as described  
5 above can be obtained commercially or can be prepared by methods known in the literature or by one skilled in the art.

## USE AND UTILITY

### 10 **A. UTILITIES**

The compounds of the present invention modulate the function of the nuclear hormone receptors, particularly the androgen receptor, and include compounds which are, for example, selective agonists, partial agonists, antagonists or partial antagonists of the androgen receptor (AR). Thus, the  
15 present compounds are useful in the treatment of AR-associated conditions. An "AR-associated condition," as used herein, denotes a condition or disorder which can be treated by modulating the function or activity of an AR in a subject, wherein treatment comprises prevention, partial alleviation or cure of the condition or disorder. Modulation may occur locally, for example, within  
20 certain tissues of the subject, or more extensively throughout a subject being treated for such a condition or disorder.

The compounds of the present invention can be administered to animals, preferably humans, for the treatment of a variety of conditions and disorders, including, but not limited to maintenance of muscle strength and function (e.g.,  
25 in the elderly); reversal or prevention of frailty or age-related functional decline ("ARFD") in the elderly (e.g., sarcopenia); treatment of catabolic side effects of glucocorticoids; prevention and/or treatment of reduced bone mass, density or growth (e.g., osteoporosis and osteopenia); treatment of chronic fatigue syndrome (CFS); chronic myalgia; treatment of acute fatigue syndrome and  
30 muscle loss following elective surgery (e.g., post-surgical rehabilitation);

accelerating of wound healing; accelerating bone fracture repair (such as accelerating the recovery of hip fracture patients); accelerating healing of complicated fractures, e.g. distraction osteogenesis; in joint replacement; prevention of post-surgical adhesion formation; acceleration of tooth repair or growth; maintenance of sensory function (e.g., hearing, sight, olfaction and taste); treatment of periodontal disease; treatment of wasting secondary to fractures and wasting in connection with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), chronic liver disease, AIDS, weightlessness, cancer cachexia, burn and trauma recovery, chronic catabolic state (e.g., coma), eating disorders (e.g., anorexia) and chemotherapy; treatment of cardiomyopathy; treatment of thrombocytopenia; treatment of growth retardation in connection with Crohn's disease; treatment of short bowel syndrome; treatment of irritable bowel syndrome; treatment of inflammatory bowel disease; treatment of Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis; treatment of complications associated with transplantation; treatment of physiological short stature including growth hormone deficient children and short stature associated with chronic illness; treatment of obesity and growth retardation associated with obesity; treatment of anorexia (e.g., associated with cachexia or aging); treatment of hypercortisolism and Cushing's syndrome; Paget's disease; treatment of osteoarthritis; induction of pulsatile growth hormone release; treatment of osteochondrodysplasias; treatment of depression, nervousness, irritability and stress; treatment of reduced mental energy and low self-esteem (e.g., motivation/assertiveness); improvement of cognitive function (e.g., the treatment of dementia, including Alzheimer's disease and short term memory loss); treatment of catabolism in connection with pulmonary dysfunction and ventilator dependency; treatment of cardiac dysfunction (e.g., associated with valvular disease, myocardial infarction, cardiac hypertrophy or congestive heart failure); lowering blood pressure; protection against ventricular dysfunction or prevention of reperfusion events; treatment of adults in chronic dialysis; reversal or slowing of the catabolic state of aging; attenuation or reversal of



protein catabolic responses following trauma (e.g., reversal of the catabolic state associated with surgery, congestive heart failure, cardiac myopathy, burns, cancer, COPD etc.); reducing cachexia and protein loss due to chronic illness such as cancer or AIDS; treatment of hyperinsulinemia including

5 nesidioblastosis; treatment of immunosuppressed patients; treatment of wasting in connection with multiple sclerosis or other neurodegenerative disorders; promotion of myelin repair; maintenance of skin thickness; treatment of metabolic homeostasis and renal homeostasis (e.g., in the frail elderly); stimulation of osteoblasts, bone remodeling and cartilage growth; regulation of

10 food intake; treatment of insulin resistance, including NIDDM, in mammals (e.g., humans); treatment of insulin resistance in the heart; improvement of sleep quality and correction of the relative hyposomatotropism of senescence due to high increase in REM sleep and a decrease in REM latency; treatment of hypothermia; treatment of congestive heart failure; treatment of lipodystrophy

15 (e.g., in patients taking HIV or AIDS therapies such as protease inhibitors); treatment of muscular atrophy (e.g., due to physical inactivity, bed rest or reduced weight-bearing conditions); treatment of musculoskeletal impairment (e.g., in the elderly); improvement of the overall pulmonary function; treatment of sleep disorders; and the treatment of the catabolic state of prolonged critical

20 illness; treatment of hirsutism, acne, seborrhea, androgenic alopecia, anemia, hyperpilosity, benign prostate hypertrophy, adenomas and neoplasies of the prostate (e.g., advanced metastatic prostate cancer) and malignant tumor cells containing the androgen receptor, such as is the case for breast, brain, skin, ovarian, bladder, lymphatic, liver and kidney cancers; cancers of the skin,

25 pancreas, endometrium, lung and colon; osteosarcoma; hypercalcemia of malignancy; metastatic bone disease; treatment of spermatogenesis, endometriosis and polycystic ovary syndrome; coneracting preeclampsia, eclampsia of pregnancy and preterm labor; treatment of premenstural syndrome; treatment of vaginal dryness; age related decreased testosterone

30 levels in men, male menopause, hypogonadism, male hormone replacement,

male and female sexual dysfunction (e.g., erectile dysfunction, decreased sex drive, sexual well-being, decreased libido), urinary incontinence, male and female contraception, hair loss, Reaven's Syndrome and the enhancement of bone and muscle performance/strength. The term treatment is also intended to include prophylactic treatment.

In addition, the conditions, diseases, and maladies collectively referenced to as "Syndrome X" or Metabolic Syndrome as detailed in Johannsson *J. Clin. Endocrinol. Metab.*, 82, 727-34 (1997), may be treated employing the compounds of the invention.

## B. COMBINATIONS

The present invention includes within its scope pharmaceutical compositions comprising, as an active ingredient, a therapeutically effective amount of at least one of the compounds of formula I, alone or in combination with a pharmaceutical carrier or diluent. Optionally, compounds of the present invention can be used alone, in combination with other compounds of the invention, or in combination with one or more other therapeutic agent(s), e.g., an antibiotic or other pharmaceutically active material.

The compounds of the present invention may be combined with growth promoting agents, such as, but not limited to, TRH, diethylstilbesterol, theophylline, enkephalins, E series prostaglandins, compounds disclosed in U.S. Patent No. 3,239,345, e.g., zeranol, and compounds disclosed in U.S. Patent No. 4,036,979, e.g., sulbenox or peptides disclosed in U.S. Patent No. 4,411,890.

The compounds of the invention may also be used in combination with growth hormone secretagogues such as GHRP-6, GHRP-1 (as described in U.S. Patent No. 4,411,890 and publications WO 89/07110 and WO 89/07111), GHRP-2 (as described in WO 93/04081), NN703 (Novo Nordisk), LY444711 (Lilly), MK-677 (Merck), CP424391 (Pfizer) and B-HT920, or with growth

hormone releasing factor and its analogs or growth hormone and its analogs or somatomedins including IGF-1 and IGF-2, or with alpha-adrenergic agonists, such as clonidine or serotonin 5-HT<sub>D</sub> agonists, such as sumatriptan, or agents which inhibit somatostatin or its release, such as physostigmine and  
5 pyridostigmine. A still further use of the disclosed compounds of the invention is in combination with parathyroid hormone, PTH(1-34) or bisphosphonates, such as MK-217 (alendronate).

A still further use of the compounds of the invention is in combination with estrogen, testosterone, a selective estrogen receptor modulator, such as  
10 tamoxifen or raloxifene, or other androgen receptor modulators, such as those disclosed in Edwards, J. P. *et. al.*, *Bio. Med. Chem. Let.*, 9, 1003-1008 (1999) and Hamann, L. G. *et. al.*, *J. Med. Chem.*, 42, 210-212 (1999).

A further use of the compounds of this invention is in combination with progesterone receptor agonists ("PRA"), such as levonorgestrel,  
15 medroxyprogesterone acetate (MPA).

The compounds of the present invention may be employed alone or in combination with each other and/or other modulators of nuclear hormone receptors or other suitable therapeutic agents useful in the treatment of the aforementioned disorders including: anti-diabetic agents; anti-osteoporosis  
20 agents; anti-obesity agents; anti-inflammatory agents; anti-anxiety agents; anti-depressants; anti-hypertensive agents; anti-platelet agents; anti-thrombotic and thrombolytic agents; cardiac glycosides; cholesterol/lipid lowering agents; mineralocorticoid receptor antagonists; phosphodiesterase inhibitors; protein tyrosine kinase inhibitors; thyroid mimetics (including thyroid receptor  
25 agonists); anabolic agents; HIV or AIDS therapies; therapies useful in the treatment of Alzheimer's disease and other cognitive disorders; therapies useful in the treatment of sleeping disorders; anti-proliferative agents; and anti-tumor agents.

Examples of suitable anti-diabetic agents for use in combination with  
30 the compounds of the present invention include biguanides (e.g., metformin),

glucosidase inhibitors (e.g., acarbose), insulins (including insulin secretagogues or insulin sensitizers), meglitinides (e.g., repaglinide), sulfonylureas (e.g., glimepiride, glyburide and glipizide), biguanide/glyburide combinations (e.g., Glucovance®), thiazolidinediones (e.g., troglitazone, rosiglitazone and  
5 pioglitazone), PPAR-alpha agonists, PPAR-gamma agonists, PPAR  
alpha/gamma dual agonists, SGLT2 inhibitors, glycogen phosphorylase  
inhibitors, inhibitors of fatty acid binding protein (aP2) such as those disclosed  
in U.S. Serial No. 09/519,079 filed March 6, 2000, glucagon-like peptide-1  
(GLP-1), and dipeptidyl peptidase IV (DPP4) inhibitors such as those disclosed  
10 in WO 0168603.

Examples of suitable anti-osteoporosis agents for use in combination  
with the compounds of the present invention include alendronate, risedronate,  
PTH, PTH fragment, raloxifene, calcitonins, steroidal or non-steroidal  
progesterone receptor agonists, RANK ligand antagonists, calcium sensing  
15 receptor antagonists, TRAP inhibitors, selective estrogen receptor modulators  
(SERM's), estrogen and AP-1 inhibitors.

Examples of suitable anti-obesity agents for use in combination with the  
compounds of the present invention include aP2 inhibitors, such as those  
disclosed in U.S. Serial No. 09/519,079 filed March 6, 2000, PPAR gamma  
20 antagonists, PPAR delta agonists, beta 3 adrenergic agonists, such as AJ9677  
(Takeda/Dainippon), L750355 (Merck), or CP331648 (Pfizer) or other known  
beta 3 agonists as disclosed in U.S. Patent Nos. 5,541,204, 5,770,615,  
5,491,134, 5,776,983 and 5,488,064, a lipase inhibitor, such as orlistat or ATL-  
962 (Alizyme), a serotonin (and dopamine) reuptake inhibitor, such as  
25 sibutramine, topiramate (Johnson & Johnson) or axokine (Regeneron), a  
thyroid receptor beta drug, such as a thyroid receptor ligand as disclosed in WO  
97/21993 (U. Cal SF), WO 99/00353 (KaroBio) and GB98/284425 (KaroBio),  
and/or an anorectic agent, such as dexamphetamine, phentermine,  
phenylpropanolamine or mazindol.

Examples of suitable anti-inflammatory agents for use in combination with the compounds of the present invention include prednisone, dexamethasone, Enbrel®, cyclooxygenase inhibitors (i.e., COX-1 and/or COX-2 inhibitors such as NSAIDs, aspirin, indomethacin, ibuprofen, piroxicam, Naproxen®, Celebrex®, Vioxx®), CTLA4-Ig agonists/antagonists, CD40 ligand antagonists, IMPDH inhibitors, such as mycophenolate (CellCept®), integrin antagonists, alpha-4 beta-7 integrin antagonists, cell adhesion inhibitors, interferon gamma antagonists, ICAM-1, tumor necrosis factor (TNF) antagonists (e.g., infliximab, OR1384), prostaglandin synthesis inhibitors, budesonide, clofazimine, CNI-1493, CD4 antagonists (e.g., priliximab), p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase inhibitors, protein tyrosine kinase (PTK) inhibitors, IKK inhibitors, and therapies for the treatment of irritable bowel syndrome (e.g., Zelmac® and Maxi-K® openers such as those disclosed in U.S. Patent No. 6,184,231 B1).

Examples of suitable anti-anxiety agents for use in combination with the compounds of the present invention include diazepam, lorazepam, buspirone, oxazepam, and hydroxyzine pamoate.

Examples of suitable anti-depressants for use in combination with the compounds of the present invention include citalopram, fluoxetine, nefazodone, sertraline, and paroxetine.

Examples of suitable anti-hypertensive agents for use in combination with the compounds of the present invention include beta adrenergic blockers, calcium channel blockers (L-type and T-type; e.g. diltiazem, verapamil, nifedipine, amlodipine and mybefradil), diuretics (e.g., chlorothiazide, hydrochlorothiazide, flumethiazide, hydroflumethiazide, bendroflumethiazide, methylchlorothiazide, trichloromethiazide, polythiazide, benzthiazide, ethacrynic acid, tricyclic, chlorthalidone, furosemide, musolimine, bumetanide, triamterene, amiloride, spironolactone), renin inhibitors, ACE inhibitors (e.g., captopril, zofenopril, fosinopril, enalapril, ceranopril, cilazopril, delapril, pentopril, quinapril, ramipril, lisinopril), AT-1 receptor

antagonists (e.g., losartan, irbesartan, valsartan), ET receptor antagonists (e.g., sitaxsentan, atrsentan and compounds disclosed in U.S. Patent Nos. 5,612,359 and 6,043,265), Dual ET/AII antagonist (e.g., compounds disclosed in WO 00/01389), neutral endopeptidase (NEP) inhibitors, vasopepsidase inhibitors  
5 (dual NEP-ACE inhibitors) (e.g., omapatrilat and gemopatrilat), and nitrates.

Examples of suitable anti-platelet agents for use in combination with the compounds of the present invention include GPIIb/IIIa blockers (e.g., abciximab, eptifibatide, tirofiban), P2Y<sub>12</sub> antagonists (e.g., clopidogrel, ticlopidine, CS-747), thromboxane receptor antagonists (e.g., ifetroban),  
10 aspirin, and PDE-III inhibitors (e.g., dipyridamole) with or without aspirin.

Examples of suitable cardiac glycosides for use in combination with the compounds of the present invention include digitalis and ouabain.

Examples of suitable cholesterol/lipid lowering agents for use in combination with the compounds of the present invention include HMG-CoA  
15 reductase inhibitors (e.g., pravastatin, lovastatin, atorvastatin, simvastatin, NK-104 (a.k.a. itavastatin, or nisvastatin or nisbastatin) and ZD-4522 (a.k.a. rosuvastatin, or atavastatin or visastatin)), squalene synthetase inhibitors, fibrates, bile acid sequestrants, ACAT inhibitors, MTP inhibitors, lipooxygenase inhibitors, cholesterol absorption inhibitors, and cholesterol  
20 ester transfer protein inhibitors (e.g., CP-529414).

Examples of suitable mineralocorticoid receptor antagonists for use in combination with the compounds of the present invention include spironolactone and eplerinone.

Examples of suitable phosphodiesterase (PDE) inhibitors for use in  
25 combination with the compounds of the present invention include PDE-3 inhibitors such as cilostazol, and phosphodiesterase-5 inhibitors (PDE-5 inhibitors) such as sildenafil.

Examples of suitable thyroid mimetics for use in combination with the compounds of the present invention include thyrotropin, polythyroid, KB-  
30 130015, and dronedarone.

Examples of suitable anabolic agents for use in combination with the compounds of the present invention include testosterone, TRH diethylstilbesterol, estrogens,  $\beta$ -agonists, theophylline, anabolic steroids, dehydroepiandrosterone, enkephalins, E-series prostagladins, retinoic acid and  
5 compounds as disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 3,239,345, e.g., Zeranol®; U.S. Patent No. 4,036,979, e.g., Sulbenox® or peptides as disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 4,411,890.

Examples of suitable HIV or AIDS therapies for use in combination with the compounds of the present invention include indinavir sulfate,  
10 saquinavir, saquinavir mesylate, ritonavir, lamivudine, zidovudine, lamivudine/zidovudine combinations, zalcitabine, didanosine, stavudine, and megestrol acetate.

Examples of suitable therapies for treatment of Alzheimer's disease and cognitive disorders for use in combination with the compounds of the present  
15 invention include donepezil, tacrine, revastigmine, 5HT<sub>6</sub>, gamma secretase inhibitors, beta secretase inhibitors, SK channel blockers, Maxi-K blockers, and KCNQs blockers.

Examples of suitable therapies for treatment of sleeping disorders for use in combination with the compounds of the present invention include  
20 melatonin analogs, melatonin receptor antagonists, ML1B agonists, and GABA/NMDA receptor antagonists.

Examples of suitable anti-proliferative agents for use in combination with the compounds of the present invention include cyclosporin A, paclitaxel, FK-506, and adriamycin.

25 Examples of suitable anti-tumor agents for use in combination with the compounds of the present invention include paclitaxel, adriamycin, epothilones, cisplatin and carboplatin.

Compounds of the present invention may further be used in combination with nutritional supplements such as those described in U.S. 5,179,080,

especially in combination with whey protein or casein, amino acids (such as leucine, branched amino acids and hydroxymethylbutyrate), triglycerides, vitamins (e.g., A, B6, B12, folate, C, D and E), minerals (e.g., selenium, magnesium, zinc, chromium, calcium and potassium), carnitine, lipoic acid,  
5 creatinine, B-hydroxy-B-methylbutyrate (Juven) and coenzyme Q-10.

In addition, compounds of the present invention may be used in combination with therapeutic agents used in the treatment of sexual dysfunction, including but not limited to PDE-5 inhibitors, such as sildenafil or IC-351.

10 Compounds of the present invention may further be used in combination with antiresorptive agents, hormone replacement therapies, vitamin D analogues, elemental calcium and calcium supplements, cathepsin K inhibitors, MMP inhibitors, vitronectin receptor antagonists, Src SH<sub>2</sub> antagonists, vacular -H<sup>+</sup>- ATPase inhibitors, ipriflavone, fluoride, Tibolone, prostanoids, 17-beta  
15 hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase inhibitors and Src kinase inhibitors.

Compounds of the present invention may be used in combination with male contraceptives, such as nonoxynol 9 or therapeutic agents for the treatment of hair loss, such as minoxidil and finasteride or chemotherapeutic agents, such as with LHRH agonists.

20 Further, the compounds of the present invention may be used in combination with anti-cancer and cytotoxic agents, including but not limited to alkylating agents such as nitrogen mustards, alkyl sulfonates, nitrosoureas, ethylenimines, and triazenes; antimetabolites such as folate antagonists, purine analogues, and pyrimidine analogues; antibiotics such as anthracyclines,  
25 bleomycins, mitomycin, dactinomycin, and plicamycin; enzymes such as L-asparaginase; farnesyl-protein transferase inhibitors; 5 $\alpha$ -reductase inhibitors; inhibitors of 17 $\beta$ -hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase type 3; hormonal agents such as glucocorticoids, estrogens/ antiestrogens, androgens/ antiandrogens, progestins, and luteinizing hormone-releasing hormone antagonists, octreotide  
30 acetate; microtubule-disruptor agents, such as ecteinascidins or their analogs



and derivatives; microtubule-stabilizing agents such as taxanes, for example, paclitaxel (Taxol®), docetaxel (Taxotere®), and their analogs, and epothilones, such as epothilones A-F and their analogs; plant-derived products, such as vinca alkaloids, epipodophyllotoxins, taxanes; and topoisomerase inhibitors;

5 prenyl-protein transferase inhibitors; and miscellaneous agents such as hydroxyurea, procarbazine, mitotane, hexamethylmelamine, platinum coordination complexes such as cisplatin and carboplatin; and other agents used as anti-cancer and cytotoxic agents such as biological response modifiers, growth factors; immune modulators and monoclonal antibodies. The

10 compounds of the invention may also be used in conjunction with radiation therapy.

Representative examples of these classes of anti-cancer and cytotoxic agents include but are not limited to mechlorethamine hydrochloride, cyclophosphamide, chlorambucil, melphalan, ifosfamide, busulfan, carmustin,

15 lomustine, semustine, streptozocin, thiotepa, dacarbazine, methotrexate, thioguanine, mercaptopurine, fludarabine, pentastatin, cladribin, cytarabine, fluorouracil, doxorubicin hydrochloride, daunorubicin, idarubicin, bleomycin sulfate, mitomycin C, actinomycin D, safracins, saframycins, quinocarcins, discodermolides, vincristine, vinblastine, vinorelbine tartrate, etoposide,

20 etoposide phosphate, teniposide, paclitaxel, tamoxifen, estramustine, estramustine phosphate sodium, flutamide, buserelin, leuprolide, pteridines, diyneses, levamisole, aflacon, interferon, interleukins, aldesleukin, filgrastim, sargramostim, rituximab, BCG, tretinoin, irinotecan hydrochloride, betamethosone, gemcitabine hydrochloride, altretamine, and topotecan and any

25 analogs or derivatives thereof.

Preferred member of these classes include, but are not limited to, paclitaxel, cisplatin, carboplatin, doxorubicin, carminomycin, daunorubicin, aminopterin, methotrexate, methopterin, mitomycin C, ecteinascidin 743, or porfiromycin, 5-fluorouracil, 6-mercaptopurine, gemcitabine, cytosine

30 arabinoside, podophyllotoxin or podophyllotoxin derivatives such as etoposide,

etoposide phosphate or teniposide, melphalan, vinblastine, vincristine, leurosine, vindesine and leurosine.

Examples of anticancer and other cytotoxic agents include the following: epothilone derivatives as found in German Patent No. 4138042.8; 5 WO 97/19086, WO 98/22461, WO 98/25929, WO 98/38192, WO 99/01124, WO 99/02224, WO 99/02514, WO 99/03848, WO 99/07692, WO 99/27890, WO 99/28324, WO 99/43653, WO 99/54330, WO 99/54318, WO 99/54319, WO 99/65913, WO 99/67252, WO 99/67253 and WO 00/00485; cyclin dependent kinase inhibitors as found in WO 99/24416 (see also U.S. Patent No. 10 6,040,321); and prenyl-protein transferase inhibitors as found in WO 97/30992 and WO 98/54966; and agents such as those described generically and specifically in U.S. Patent No. 6,011,029 (the compounds of which U.S. Patent can be employed together with any NHR modulators (including, but not limited to, those of present invention) such as AR modulators, ER modulators, with 15 LHRH modulators, or with surgical castration, especially in the treatment of cancer).

The above other therapeutic agents, when employed in combination with the compounds of the present invention, may be used, for example, in those amounts indicated in the Physicians' Desk Reference (PDR) or as otherwise 20 determined by one of ordinary skill in the art.

The compounds of the formula I can be administered for any of the uses described herein by any suitable means, for example, orally, such as in the form of tablets, capsules, granules or powders; sublingually; buccally; parenterally, such as by subcutaneous, intravenous, intramuscular, or intrasternal injection or 25 infusion techniques (e.g., as sterile injectable aqueous or non-aqueous solutions or suspensions); nasally, including administration to the nasal membranes, such as by inhalation spray; topically, such as in the form of a cream or ointment; or rectally such as in the form of suppositories; in dosage unit formulations containing non-toxic, pharmaceutically acceptable vehicles or diluents. The 30 present compounds can, for example, be administered in a form suitable for

immediate release or extended release. Immediate release or extended release can be achieved by the use of suitable pharmaceutical compositions comprising the present compounds, or, particularly in the case of extended release, by the use of devices such as subcutaneous implants or osmotic pumps. The present  
5 compounds can also be administered liposomally.

Exemplary compositions for oral administration include suspensions which can contain, for example, microcrystalline cellulose for imparting bulk, alginic acid or sodium alginate as a suspending agent, methylcellulose as a viscosity enhancer, and sweeteners or flavoring agents such as those known in  
10 the art; and immediate release tablets which can contain, for example, microcrystalline cellulose, dicalcium phosphate, starch, magnesium stearate and/or lactose and/or other excipients, binders, extenders, disintegrants, diluents and lubricants such as those known in the art. The compounds of formula I can also be delivered through the oral cavity by sublingual and/or  
15 buccal administration. Molded tablets, compressed tablets or freeze-dried tablets are exemplary forms which may be used. Exemplary compositions include those formulating the present compound(s) with fast dissolving diluents such as mannitol, lactose, sucrose and/or cyclodextrins. Also included in such formulations may be high molecular weight excipients such as celluloses  
20 (avicel) or polyethylene glycols (PEG). Such formulations can also include an excipient to aid mucosal adhesion such as hydroxy propyl cellulose (HPC), hydroxy propyl methyl cellulose (HPMC), sodium carboxy methyl cellulose (SCMC), maleic anhydride copolymer (e.g., Gantrez), and agents to control release such as polyacrylic copolymer (e.g. Carbopol 934). Lubricants,  
25 glidants, flavors, coloring agents and stabilizers may also be added for ease of fabrication and use.

Exemplary compositions for nasal aerosol or inhalation administration include solutions in saline which can contain, for example, benzyl alcohol or other suitable preservatives, absorption promoters to enhance bioavailability,  
30 and/or other solubilizing or dispersing agents such as those known in the art.

Exemplary compositions for parenteral administration include injectable solutions or suspensions which can contain, for example, suitable non-toxic, parenterally acceptable diluents or solvents, such as mannitol, 1,3-butanediol, water, Ringer's solution, an isotonic sodium chloride solution, or other suitable  
5 dispersing or wetting and suspending agents, including synthetic mono- or diglycerides, and fatty acids, including oleic acid, or Cremaphor.

Exemplary compositions for rectal administration include suppositories which can contain, for example, a suitable non-irritating excipient, such as cocoa butter, synthetic glyceride esters or polyethylene glycols, which are solid  
10 at ordinary temperatures, but liquify and/or dissolve in the rectal cavity to release the drug.

Exemplary compositions for topical administration include a topical carrier such as Plastibase (mineral oil gelled with polyethylene).

The effective amount of a compound of the present invention can be  
15 determined by one of ordinary skill in the art, and includes exemplary dosage amounts for an adult human of from about 0.01 to 2000 mg of active compound per day, which can be administered in a single dose or in the form of individual divided doses, such as from 1 to 4 times per day. It will be understood that the specific dose level and frequency of dosage for any  
20 particular subject can be varied and will depend upon a variety of factors including the activity of the specific compound employed, the metabolic stability and length of action of that compound, the species, age, body weight, general health, sex and diet of the subject, the mode and time of administration, rate of excretion, drug combination, and severity of the particular condition.  
25 Preferred subjects for treatment include animals, most preferably mammalian species such as humans, and domestic animals such as dogs, cats and the like, subject to NHR-associated conditions.

## TRANSACTIVATION ASSAYS:

### **AR Specific Assay:**

Compounds of the present invention were tested in transactivation  
5 assays of a transfected reporter construct and using the endogenous androgen  
receptor of the host cells. The transactivation assay provides a method for  
identifying functional agonists and partial agonists that mimic, or antagonists  
that inhibit, the effect of native hormones, in this case, dihydrotestosterone  
(DHT). This assay can be used to predict *in vivo* activity as there is a good  
10 correlation in both series of data. See, e.g. T. Berger et al., *J. Steroid Biochem.*  
*Molec. Biol.* 773 (1992), the disclosure of which is herein incorporated by  
reference.

For the transactivation assay a reporter plasmid is introduced by  
transfection (a procedure to induce cells to take foreign genes) into the  
15 respective cells. This reporter plasmid, comprising the cDNA for a reporter  
protein, such as secreted alkaline phosphatase (SEAP), controlled by prostate  
specific antigen (PSA) upstream sequences containing androgen response  
elements (AREs). This reporter plasmid functions as a reporter for the  
transcription-modulating activity of the AR. Thus, the reporter acts as a  
20 surrogate for the products (mRNA then protein) normally expressed by a gene  
under control of the AR and its native hormone. In order to detect antagonists,  
the transactivation assay is carried out in the presence of constant concentration  
of the natural AR hormone (DHT) known to induce a defined reporter signal.  
Increasing concentrations of a suspected antagonist will decrease the reporter  
25 signal (e.g., SEAP production). On the other hand, exposing the transfected  
cells to increasing concentrations of a suspected agonist will increase the  
production of the reporter signal.

For this assay, LNCaP and MDA 453 cells were obtained from the  
American Type Culture Collection (Rockville, MD), and maintained in RPMI  
30 1640 or DMEM medium supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum (FBS;

Gibco) respectively. The respective cells were transiently transfected by electroporation according to the optimized procedure described by Heiser, 130 *Methods Mol. Biol.*, 117 (2000), with the pSEAP2/PSA540/Enhancer reporter plasmid. The reporter plasmid, was constructed as follows: commercial human placental genomic DNA was used to generate by Polymerase Cycle Reaction (PCR) a fragment containing the BglIII site (position 5284) and the Hind III site at position 5831 of the human prostate specific antigen promoter (Accession # U37672), Schuur, et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 271 (12): 7043-51 (1996). This fragment was subcloned into the pSEAP2/basic (Clontech) previously digested with BglIII and HindIII to generate the pSEAP2/PSA540 construct. Then a fragment bearing the fragment of human PSA upstream sequence between positions -5322 and -3873 was amplified by PCR from human placental genomic DNA. A XhoI and a BglIII sites were introduced with the primers. The resulting fragment was subcloned into pSEAP2/PSA540 digested with XhoI and BglIII respectively, to generate the pSEAP2/PSA540/Enhancer construct. LNCaP and MDA MB-453 cells were collected in media containing 10% charcoal stripped FBS. Each cell suspension was distributed into two Gene Pulser Cuvetts (Bio-Rad) which then received 8 µg of the reporter construct, and electoporated using a Bio-Rad Gene Pulser at 210 volts and 960 µFaraday. Following the transfections the cells were washed and incubated with media containing charcoal stripped fetal bovine serum in the absence (blank) or presence (control) of 1 nM dihydrotestosterone (DHT; Sigma Chemical) and in the presence or absence of the standard anti-androgen bicalutamide or compounds of the present invention in concentrations ranging from  $10^{-10}$  to  $10^{-5}$  M (sample). Duplicates were used for each sample. The compound dilutions were performed on a Biomek 2000 laboratory workstation.

After 48 h, a fraction of the supernatant was assayed for SEAP activity using the Phospha-Light Chemiluminescent Reporter Gene Assay System (Tropix, Inc). Viability of the remaining cells was determined using the CellTiter 96 Aqueous Non-Radioactive Cell Proliferation Assay (MTS Assay,

Promega). Briefly, a mix of a tetrazolium compound (3-(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-yl)-5-(3-carboxymethoxyphenyl)-2-(4-sulfophenyl)-2H-tetrazolium, inner salt; MTS) and an electron coupling reagent (phenazine methosulfate; PMS) are added to the cells. MTS (Owen's reagent) is bio-reduced by cells into a formazan that is soluble in tissue culture medium, and therefore its absorbance at 490 nm can be measured directly from 96 well assay plates without additional processing. The quantity of formazan product as measured by the amount of 490 nm absorbance is directly proportional to the number of living cells in culture. For each replicate the SEAP reading was normalized by the Abs490 value derived from the MTS assay. For the antagonist mode, the % Inhibition was calculated as:

$$\% \text{ Inhibition} = 100 \times (1 - [\text{average control} - \text{average blank} / \text{average sample} - \text{average blank}])$$

Data was plotted and the concentration of compound that inhibited 50% of the normalized SEAP was quantified (IC<sub>50</sub>).

For the agonist mode % Control was referred as the effect of the tested compound compared to the maximal effect observed with the natural hormone, in this case DHT, and was calculated as:

$$\% \text{ Control} = 100 \times \text{average sample} - \text{average blank} / \text{average control} - \text{average blank}$$

Data was plotted and the concentration of compound that activates to levels 50% of the normalized SEAP for the control was quantified (EC<sub>50</sub>).

#### GR Specificity Assay:

The reporter plasmid utilized was comprised of the cDNA for the reporter SEAP protein, as described for the AR specific transactivation assay. Expression of the reporter SEAP protein was controlled by the mouse mammary tumor virus long terminal repeat (MMTV LTR) sequences that  
5 contains three hormone response elements (HREs) that can be regulated by both GR and PR see, e.g. G. Chalepakakis et al., Cell, 53(3), 371 (1988). This plasmid was transfected into A549 cells, which expresses endogenous GR, to obtain a GR specific transactivation assay. A549 cells were obtained from the American Type Culture Collection (Rockville, MD), and maintained in RPMI  
10 1640 supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum (FBS; Gibco). Determination of the GR specific antagonist activity of the compounds of the present invention was identical to that described for the AR specific transactivation assay, except that the DHT was replaced with 5 nM dexamethasone (Sigma Chemicals), a specific agonist for GR. Determination of the GR specific  
15 agonist activity of the compounds of the present invention was performed as described for the AR transactivation assay, wherein one measures the activation of the GR specific reporter system by the addition of a test compound, in the absence of a known GR specific agonists ligand.



**PR Specific Assay:**

The reporter plasmid utilized was comprised of the cDNA for the reporter SEAP protein, as described for the AR specific transactivation assay. Expression of the reporter SEAP protein was controlled by the mouse  
5 mammary tumor virus long terminal repeat (MMTV LTR) sequences that contains three hormone response elements (HRE's) that can be regulated by both GR and PR. This plasmid was transfected into T47D, which expresses endogenous PR, to obtain a PR specific transactivation assay. T47D cells were obtained from the American Type Culture Collection (Rockville, MD), and  
10 maintained in DMEM medium supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum (FBS; Gibco). Determination of the PR specific antagonist activity of the compounds of the present invention was identical to that described for the AR specific transactivation assay, except that the DHT was replaced with 1 nM Promegestone (NEN), a specific agonist for PR. Determination of the PR  
15 specific agonist activity of the compounds of the present invention was performed as described for the AR transactivation assay, wherein one measures the activation of the PR specific reporter system by the addition of a test compound, in the absence of a known PR specific agonists ligand.

**20 AR Binding Assay:**

For the whole-cell binding assay, human LNCaP cells (T877A mutant AR) or MDA 453 (wild type AR) in 96-well microtiter plates containing RPMI 1640 or DMEM supplemented with 10% charcoal stripped CA-FBS (Cocaleco Biologicals) respectively, were incubated at 37 °C to remove any endogenous  
25 ligand that might be complexed with the receptor in the cells. After 48 h, either a saturation analysis to determine the  $K_d$  for tritiated dihydrotestosterone, [ $^3\text{H}$ ]-DHT, or a competitive binding assay to evaluate the ability of test compounds to compete with [ $^3\text{H}$ ]-DHT were performed. For the saturation analysis, media (RPMI 1640 or DMEM – 0.2% CA-FBS) containing [ $^3\text{H}$ ]-DHT (in  
30 concentrations ranging from 0.1 nM to 16 nM) in the absence (total binding) or

presence (non-specific binding) of a 500-fold molar excess of unlabeled DHT were added to the cells. After 4 h at 37 °C, an aliquot of the total binding media at each concentration of [<sup>3</sup>H]-DHT was removed to estimate the amount of free [<sup>3</sup>H]-DHT. The remaining media was removed, cells were washed three  
5 times with PBS and harvested onto UniFilter GF/B plates (Packard), Microscint (Packard) was added and plates counted in a Top-Counter (Packard) to evaluate the amount of bound [<sup>3</sup>H]-DHT.

For the saturation analysis, the difference between the total binding and the non-specific binding, was defined as specific binding. The specific binding  
10 was evaluated by Scatchard analysis to determine the  $K_d$  for [<sup>3</sup>H]-DHT. See e.g. D. Rodbard, Mathematics and statistics of ligand assays: an illustrated guide: In: J. Langon and J. J. Clapp, eds., Ligand Assay, Masson Publishing U.S.A., Inc., New York, pp. 45-99, (1981), the disclosure of which is herein incorporated by reference.

15 For the competition studies, media containing 1 nM [<sup>3</sup>H]-DHT and compounds of the invention ("test compounds") in concentrations ranging from  $10^{-10}$  to  $10^{-5}$  M were added to the cells. Two replicates were used for each sample. After 4 h at 37 °C, cells were washed, harvested and counted as described above. The data was plotted as the amount of [<sup>3</sup>H]-DHT (% of  
20 control in the absence of test compound) remaining over the range of the dose response curve for a given compound. The concentration of test compound that inhibited 50% of the amount of [<sup>3</sup>H]-DHT bound in the absence of competing ligand was quantified ( $IC_{50}$ ) after log-logit transformation. The  $K_i$  values were determined by application of the Cheng-Prusoff equation to the  
25  $IC_{50}$  values, where:

$$K_I = \frac{IC_{50}}{(1 + (^3H\text{-DHT}) / K_d \text{ for } ^3H\text{-DHT})}$$

After correcting for non-specific binding, IC<sub>50</sub> values were determined. The IC<sub>50</sub> is defined as the concentration of competing ligand needed to reduce  
5 specific binding by 50%. The K<sub>d</sub>s for [<sup>3</sup>H]-DHT for MDA 453 and LNCaP were 0.7 and 0.2 nM respectively.

### C2C12 Mouse Myoblast Transactivation Assay:

Two functional transactivation assays were developed to assess the  
10 efficacy of androgen agonists in a muscle cell background using a luciferase reporter. The first assay (ARTA Stable 1) uses a cell line, Stable 1 (clone #72), which expresses the full length rat androgen receptor but requires the transient transfection of an enhancer/reporter. This cell line was derived from C2C12 mouse myoblast cells. The second assay (ARTA Stable 2) uses a cell line,  
15 Stable 2 (clone #133), derived from Stable 1 which expresses both rAR and the enhancer/luciferase reporter.

The enhancer/reporter construct used in this system is pGL3/2XDR-1/luciferase. 2XDR-1 was reported to be an AR specific response element in CV-1 cells, Brown et. al. The Journal of Biological Chemistry 272, 8227-8235,  
20 (1997). It was developed by random mutagenesis of an AR/GR consensus enhancer sequence.

### ARTA Stable 1:

1. Stable 1 cells are plated in 96 well format at 6,000 cells/well in high  
25 glucose DMEM without phenol red (Gibco BRL, Cat. No.: 21063-029) containing 10% charcoal and dextran treated FBS (HyClone Cat. No.: SH30068.02), 50 mM HEPES Buffer (Gibco BRL, Cat. No.: 15630-080), 1X MEM Na Pyruvate (Gibco BRL, Cat. No.: 11360-070), 0.5X Antibiotic-Antimycotic, and 800 µg/mL Geneticin (Gibco BRL, Cat. No.: 10131-035).

2. 48 h later, cells are transfected with pGL3/2XDR-1/luciferase using LipofectAMINE Plus<sup>TM</sup> Reagent (Gibco BRL, Cat. No.: 10964-013). Specifically, 5 ng/well pGL3/2XDR-1/luciferase DNA and 50 ng/well Salmon Sperm DNA (as carrier) are diluted with 5 µl/well Opti-MEM media (Gibco BRL, Cat. No.: 31985-070). To this, 0.5 µl/well Plus reagent is added. This mixture is incubated for 15 min at rt. In a separate vessel, 0.385 µl/well LipofectAMINE reagent is diluted with 5 µl/well Opti-MEM. The DNA mixture is then combined with the LipofectAMINE mixture and incubated for an additional 15 min at rt. During this time, the media from the cells is removed and replaced with 60 µl/well of Opti-MEM. To this is added 10 µl/well of the DNA/LipofectAMINE transfection mixture. The cells are incubated for 4 h.
3. The transfection mixture is removed from the cells and replaced with 90 µl of media as in #1 above.
4. 10 µl/well of appropriate drug dilution is placed in each well.
5. 24 h later, the Steady-Glo<sup>TM</sup> Luciferase Assay System is used to detect activity according to the manufacturer's instructions (Promega, Cat. No.: E2520).

#### 20     **ARTA Stable 2:**

1. Stable 2 cells are plated in 96 well format at 6,000 cells/well in high glucose DMEM without phenol red (Gibco BRL, Cat. No.: 21063-029) containing 10% charcoal and dextran treated FBS (HyClone Cat. No.: SH30068.02), 50 mM HEPES Buffer (Gibco BRL, Cat. No.: 15630-080), 1X MEM Na Pyruvate (Gibco BRL, Cat. No.: 11360-070), 0.5X Antibiotic-Antimycotic, 800 µg/mL Geneticin (Gibco BRL, Cat. No.: 10131-035) and 800 µg/mL Hygromycin β (Gibco BRL, Cat. No.: 10687-010).
2. 48 h later, the media on the cells is removed and replaced with 90 µl fresh. 10 µl/well of appropriate drug dilution is placed in each well.

3. 24 h later, the Steady-Glo™ Luciferase Assay System is used to detect activity according to the manufacturer's instructions (Promega, Cat. No. E2520).

5 **PROLIFERATION ASSAYS:**

**Human Prostate Cell Proliferation Assay:**

Compounds of the present invention were tested ("test compounds") on the proliferation of human prostate cancer cell lines. For that, MDA PCa2b cells, a cell line derived from the metastasis of a patient that failed castration, Navone et al., Clin. *Cancer Res.*, 3, 2493-500 (1997), were incubated with or without the test compounds for 72 h and the amount of [<sup>3</sup>H]-thymidine incorporated into DNA was quantified as a way to assess number of cells and therefore proliferation. The MDA PCa2b cell line was maintained in BRFF-HPC1 media (Biological Research Faculty & Facility Inc., MD) supplemented with 10% FBS. For the assay, cells were plated in Biocoated 96-well microplates and incubated at 37 °C in 10% FBS (charcoal-stripped)/BRFF-BMZERO (without androgens). After 24 h, the cells were treated in the absence (blank) or presence of 1 nM DHT (control) or with test compounds (sample) of the present invention in concentrations ranging from 10<sup>-10</sup> to 10<sup>-5</sup> M. Duplicates were used for each sample. The compound dilutions were performed on a Biomek 2000 laboratory work station. Seventy-two h later 0.44 uCi. of [<sup>3</sup>H]-Thymidine (Amersham) was added per well and incubated for another 24 h followed by trypsinization, harvesting of the cells onto GF/B filters. Micro-scint PS were added to the filters before counting them on a Beckman TopCount.

The % Inhibition was calculated as:

$$\% \text{ Inhibition} = 100 \times (1 - [\text{average}_{\text{control}} - \text{average}_{\text{blank}} / \text{average}_{\text{sample}} - \text{average}_{\text{blank}}])$$

Data was plotted and the concentration of compound that inhibited 50% of the  
5 [3H]-Thymidine incorporation was quantified (IC<sub>50</sub>).

#### **Murine Breast Cell Proliferation Assay:**

The ability of compounds of the present invention ("test compounds") to modulate the function of the AR was determined by testing said compounds in  
10 a proliferation assay using the androgen responsive murine breast cell line derived from the Shionogi tumor, Hiraoka *et al.*, *Cancer Res.*, **47**, 6560-6564 (1987). Stable AR dependent clones of the parental Shionogi line were established by passing tumor fragments under the general procedures originally described in Tetuo, *et. al.*, *Cancer Research* **25**, 1168-1175 (1965). From the  
15 above procedure, one stable line, SC114, was isolated, characterized and utilized for the testing of example compounds. SC114 cells were incubated with or without the test compounds for 72 h and the amount of [3H]-thymidine incorporated into DNA was quantified as a surrogate endpoint to assess the number of cells and therefore the proliferation rate as described in Suzuki *et.*  
20 *al.*, *J. Steroid Biochem. Mol. Biol.* **37**, 559-567 (1990). The SC114 cell line was maintained in MEM containing 10<sup>-8</sup> M testosterone and 2% DCC-treated FCS. For the assay, cells were plated in 96-well microplates in the maintenance media and incubated at 37 °C. On the following day, the medium was changed to serum free medium [Ham's F-12:MEM (1;1, v/v) containing  
25 0.1% BSA] with (antagonist mode) or without (agonist mode) 10<sup>-8</sup> M testosterone and the test compounds of the present invention in concentrations ranging from 10<sup>-10</sup> to 10<sup>-5</sup> M. Duplicates were used for each sample. The compound dilutions were performed on a Biomek 2000 laboratory work station. Seventy two h later 0.44uCi of [3H]-Thymidine (Amersham) was  
30 added per well and incubated for another 2 h followed by trypsinization, and

harvesting of the cells onto GF/B filters. Micro-scint PS were added to the filters before counting them on a Beckman TopCount.

For the antagonist mode, the % Inhibition was calculated as:

5    
$$\% \text{ Inhibition} = 100 \times (1 - [\text{average}_{\text{sample}} - \text{average}_{\text{blank}} / \text{average}_{\text{control}} - \text{average}_{\text{blank}}])$$

Data was plotted and the concentration of compound that inhibited 50% of the [<sup>3</sup>H]-Thymidine incorporation was quantified (IC<sub>50</sub>).

10

For the agonist mode % Control was referred as the effect of the tested compound compared to the maximal effect observed with the natural hormone, in this case DHT, and was calculated as:

15    
$$\% \text{ Control} = 100 \times (\text{average}_{\text{sample}} - \text{average}_{\text{blank}}) / (\text{average}_{\text{control}} - \text{average}_{\text{blank}})$$

Data was plotted and the concentration of compound that inhibited 50% of the [<sup>3</sup>H]-Thymidine incorporation was quantified (EC<sub>50</sub>).

20    ***In Vitro* Assay to Measure GR-Induced AP-1 Transrepression:**

The AP-1 assay is a cell-based luciferase reporter assay. A549 cells, which contain endogenous glucocorticoid receptor, were stably transfected with an AP-1 DNA binding site attached to the luciferase gene. Cells are then  
25    grown in RPMI + 10% fetal calf serum (charcoal-treated) + Penicillin/Streptomycin with 0.5mg/mL geneticin. Cells are plated the day before the assay at approximately 40000 cells/well. On assay day, the media is removed by aspiration and 20 µL assay buffer (RPMI without phenol red + 10% FCS (charcoal-treated) + Pen/Strep) is added to each well. At this point  
30    either 20 µL assay buffer (control experiments), the compounds of the present

invention ("test compounds") (dissolved in DMSO and added at varying concentrations) or dexamethasone (100 nM in DMSO, positive control) are added to each well. The plates are then pre-incubated for 15 min at 37 °C, followed by stimulation of the cells with 10 ng/mL PMA. The plates are then  
5 incubated for 7 h at 37 °C after which 40 µL luciferase substrate reagent is added to each well. Activity is measured by analysis in a luminometer as compared to control experiments treated with buffer or dexamethasone. Activity is designated as % inhibition of the reporter system as compared to the buffer control with 10 ng/mL PMA alone. The control, dexamethasone, at a  
10 concentration of  $\leq 10$  µM typically suppresses activity by 65%. Test compounds which demonstrate an inhibition of PMA induction of 50% or greater at a concentration of test compound of  $\leq 10$  µM are deemed active.

#### IN VIVO ASSAYS

##### 15 **Levator Ani & Wet Prostate Weight Assay AR Agonist Assay:**

The activity of compounds of the present invention as AR agonists was investigated in an immature male rat model, a recognized test of anabolic effects in muscle and sustaining effects in sex organs for a given compound, as described in L. G. Hershberger et al., *Proc. Soc. Expt. Biol. Med.*, **83**, 175  
20 (1953); B. L. Beyler et al., "Methods for evaluating anabolic and catabolic agents in laboratory animals", *J. Amer. Med. Women's Ass.*, **23**, 708 (1968); H. Fukuda et al., "Investigations of the levator ani muscle as an anabolic steroid assay", *Nago Dai. Yak. Ken. Nem.* **14**, 84 (1966) the disclosures of which are herein incorporated by reference.

25 The basis of this assay lies in the well-defined action of androgenic agents on the maintenance and growth of muscle tissues and sexual accessory organs in animals and man. Androgenic steroids, such as testosterone (T), have been well characterized for their ability to maintain muscle mass. Treatment of animals or humans after castrations with an exogenous source of T results in a  
30 reversal of muscular atrophy. The effects of T on muscular atrophy in the rat



levator ani muscle have been well characterized. M. Masuoka et al., "Constant cell population in normal, testosterone deprived and testosterone stimulated levator ani muscles" *Am. J. Anat.* **119**, 263 (1966); Z. Gori et al., "Testosterone hypertrophy of levator ani muscle of castrated rats. I. Quantitative data" *Boll. – Soc. Ital. Biol. Sper.* **42**, 1596 (1966); Z. Gori et al., "Testosterone hypertrophy of levator ani muscle of castrated rats. II. Electron-microscopic observations" *Boll. – Soc. Ital. Biol. Sper.* **42**, 1600 (1966); A. Boris et al., *Steroids* **15**, 61 (1970). As described above, the effects of androgens on maintenance of male sexual accessory organs, such as the prostate and seminal vesicles, is well described. Castration results in rapid involution and atrophy of the prostate and seminal vesicles. This effect can be reversed by exogenous addition of androgens. Since both the levator ani muscle and the male sex organs are the tissues most responsive to the effects of androgenic agents, this model is used to determine the androgen dependent reversal of atrophy in the levator ani muscle and the sex accessory organs in immature castrated rats. Sexually mature rats (200-250 g, 6-8 weeks-old, Sprague-Dawley, Harlan) were acquired castrated from the vendor (Taconic). The rats were divided into groups and treated daily for 7 to 14 days with one of the following:

1. Control vehicle
2. Testosterone Propionate (TP) (3 mg/rat/day, subcutaneous)
3. TP plus Bicalutamide (administered p.o. in PEGTW, QD), a recognized antiandrogen, as a reference compound.
4. To demonstrate antagonist activity, a compound of the present invention ("test compound") was administered (p.o. in PEGTW, QD) with TP (s.c. as administered in group 2) in a range of doses.
5. To demonstrate agonist activity a compound of the present invention ("test compound") was administered alone (p.o. in PEGTW, QD) in a range of doses.

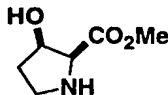
At the end of the 7-14-day treatment, the animals were sacrificed by carbon dioxide, and the levator ani, seminal vesicle and ventral prostate

weighed. To compare data from different experiments, the levator ani muscle and sexual organ weights were first standardized as mg per 100 g of body weight, and the increase in organ weight induced by TP was considered as the maximum increase (100%). Super-anova (one factor) was used for statistical analysis.

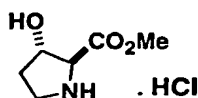
The gain and loss of sexual organ weight reflect the changes of the cell number (DNA content) and cell mass (protein content), depending upon the serum androgen concentration. See Y. Okuda et al., *J. Urol.*, **145**, 188-191 (1991), the disclosure of which is herein incorporated by reference. Therefore, measurement of organ wet weight is sufficient to indicate the bioactivity of androgens and androgen antagonist. In immature castrated rats, replacement of exogenous androgens increases levator ani, seminal vesicles (SV) and prostate in a dose dependent manner.

The maximum increase in organ weight was 4 to 5-fold when dosing 3 mg/rat/day of testosterone (T) or 1 mg/rat/day of testosterone propionate (TP) for 3 days. The  $EC_{50}$  of T and TP were about 1 mg and 0.03 mg, respectively. The increase in the weight of the VP and SV also correlated with the increase in the serum T and DHT concentration. Although administration of T showed 5-times higher serum concentrations of T and DHT at 2 h after subcutaneous injection than that of TP, thereafter, these high levels declined very rapidly. In contrast, the serum concentrations of T and DHT in TP-treated animals were fairly consistent during the 24 h, and therefore, TP showed about 10-30-fold higher potency than free T.

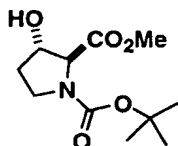
The following examples serve to better illustrate, but not limit, some of the preferred embodiments of the invention.

**Example 1****(2S,3R)-3-hydroxy-2-pyrrolidinecarboxylic acid methyl ester**

5

**1A. (2S,3S)-3-Hydroxy-2-pyrrolidinecarboxylic acid methyl ester hydrochloride salt**

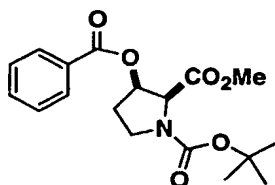
10 Hydrogen chloride gas was bubbled through a suspension of *trans*-3-hydroxy-L-proline (50 g, 0.38 mol) in MeOH (600 mL) cooled to 0 °C for 10 min. The resulting clear solution was stirred at rt for 4 h, then concentrated carefully under reduced pressure (white precipitates formed during the concentration). The resulting white solid was dried under vacuum overnight to  
15 afford the title compound (68.26 g) as a white solid.

**1B. (2S,3S)-*N*-*tert*-Butyloxycarbonyl-3-hydroxy-2-pyrrolidinecarboxylic acid methyl ester**

20 To a suspension of compound 1A (68.26 g, 0.375 mol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (1.0 L) cooled to 0 °C was added Et<sub>3</sub>N (105.3 mL, 0.755 mol), followed by portionwise addition of di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate (82.96 g, 0.380 mol). The resulting mixture was stirred at rt for 4 h, then partitioned between water and CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> layer was washed with water (2x), 20% aqueous citric  
25 acid (1x), water, brine, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and concentrated under reduced

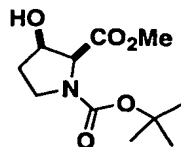
pressure to give an oily residue. The crude product was chromatographed (silica gel) eluting with 15%-50% EtOAc/hexane to afford compound **1B** (73.3 g) as a pale yellow viscous oil.

5 **1C. (2S,3R)-N-tert-Butyloxycarbonyl-3-benzoyloxy-2-pyrrolidine-carboxylic acid methyl ester**



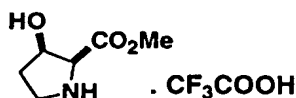
To a stirred solution of compound **1B** (69.1 g, 0.282 mol),  $\text{Ph}_3\text{P}$  (88.7 g, 0.338 mol) and benzoic acid (41.32 g, 0.338 mol) in anhydrous THF (1.35 L) cooled to 0 °C was added a solution of DEAD (62 mL, 0.33 mol) in anhydrous THF (50 mL) dropwise over 1 h through an addition funnel. After the addition, the resulting light yellow solution was stirred at rt until the reaction was complete (~ 8 h). The reaction mixture was then partitioned between EtOAc and aqueous  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ . The organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ , water (2x), brine, dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ) and concentrated under reduced pressure to yield a crude product as a semi-solid. The crude product was suspended in 25% EtOAc/hexane and stirred vigorously for 3 h. The resulting suspension was filtered and the collected white solid (triphenylphosphine oxide) rinsed with 20% EtOAc/hexane (2x). The combined filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to yield an oily residue, which was triturated twice with 20% EtOAc/hexane as described above to yield approximately 150 g of the partially purified product as a yellow oil, which was further purified by flash chromatography (silica gel) eluting with 10-20% EtOAc/hexane to furnish pure compound **1C** (88.4 g) as a light yellow viscous oil.

**1D. (2S,3R)-N-tert-Butyloxycarbonyl-3-hydroxy-2-pyrrolidinecarboxylic acid methyl ester**



To a solution of compound **1C** (88.44 g, 0.253 mol) in anhydrous MeOH (700 mL) cooled to 0 °C was slowly added a freshly prepared 1N solution of KOH in anhydrous MeOH (367 mL, 0.367 mol) over 25 min through an addition funnel. After the addition, the light yellow solution was stirred at 0 °C for 2 h, and then the reaction was quenched by slow addition (over 25 min) of a solution of 1N HCl in dioxane/EtOAc (380 mL) through an addition funnel. The resulting white suspension was concentrated under reduced pressure to remove most of the solvent, and the remaining mixture was partitioned between water and EtOAc. The separated organic phase was washed with water (2x), saturated aqueous NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (2x), water, brine, and then dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to give a light yellow oily residue, which was chromatographed (silica gel) eluting first with 25-30% EtOAc/hexane, then 5% MeOH in 30% EtOAc/hexane to furnish compound **1D** (44.6 g) as a pale yellow oil.

**1E. (2S,3R)-3-Hydroxy-2-pyrrolidinecarboxylic acid methyl ester, trifluoroacetic acid salt**



To a solution of compound **1D** (44.6 g, 0.182 mol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (450 mL) cooled to 0 °C was slowly added TFA (275 mL) through an addition funnel over 40 min. After addition, the reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 2 h, then concentrated under reduced pressure to give a viscous oily residue which

was evaporated with ether (2x), toluene (1x), ether (2x) and dried under vacuum overnight to yield compound **1E** (59.5 g) as a light yellow solid.

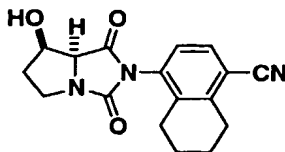
**1F. (2S,3R)-3-Hydroxy-2-pyrrolidinecarboxylic acid methyl ester**

5 To a solution of compound **1E** (12.64 g, 48.8 mmol) in MeOH (150 mL) was added WA21J resin (60 g). The resulting suspension was stirred at rt for 1 h, and then filtered. The collected resin was rinsed with MeOH (2x) and combined filtrate concentrated carefully under reduced pressure to give compound **1F** (7.7 g) as a colorless oil.  $[\alpha]_D = 14.9^\circ$  (c. 1.0, MeOH); HPLC:  
10 100% at 0.157 min (retention time) (Conditions: Phenom. Luna C18 (4.6 x 50 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B; 4 min gradient (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>), Flow rate at 4 mL/min., UV detection at 220 nm); MS (ES)  $m/z$  146 [M+1]<sup>+</sup>

15

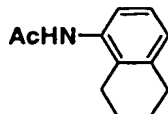
**Example 2**

**(7R,7aS)-4-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxo-tetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydronaphthalene-1-carbonitrile**



20

**2A. N-(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydronaphthalen-1-yl)-acetamide**

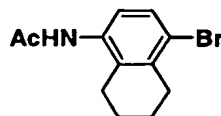


To a solution of commercially available 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-  
25 naphthylamine (2 g, 14 mmol) in EtOH (5 mL) at rt was slowly added acetic

anhydride (1.28 mL, 13.6 mmol). After addition, the reaction mixture was stirred at rt for 5 min. The resulting suspension was filtered, the collected solid washed with hexane (5x) and dried under vacuum to furnish the title compound (2.5 g) as an off-white solid.

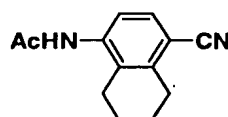
5

**2B. *N*-(4-Bromo-5,6,7,8-tetrahydronaphthalen-1-yl)-acetamide**



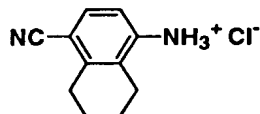
To a solution of compound **2A** (2 g, 11 mmol) in AcOH (15 mL) cooled at 0 °C was added a solution of bromine (1.69 mL, 33 mmol) in AcOH (1.2  
10 mL) slowly so that the reaction temperature was maintained below 17 °C. After addition, the reaction mixture was stirred at rt until all the starting material was consumed (~ 4 h). The reaction mixture was then poured into ice/water and the resulting suspension filtered. The collected solid was washed with H<sub>2</sub>O until the filtrate pH = 6-7, and dried in a vacuum oven at 50 °C overnight to yield  
15 compound **2B** (2.7 g) as an off-white solid.

**2C. *N*-(4-Cyano-5,6,7,8-tetrahydronaphthalen-1-yl)-acetamide**



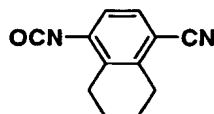
A suspension of compound **2B** (1 g, 3.7 mmol) and CuCN (0.335 g, 0.374 mmol) in anhydrous DMF (8 mL) was refluxed for 5 h. After cooling to  
20 rt, the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure to remove most of the DMF and the remaining residue triturated with EtOAc (5x). The combined EtOAc was washed with water and brine, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), and concentrated under reduced pressure to dryness to yield compound **2C** (0.8 g)  
25 as a yellow solid.

**2D. 4-Amino-5,6,7,8-tetrahydronaphthalene-1-carbonitrile,  
hydrochloride salt**



5        A suspension of **2C** (0.40 g, 1.87 mmol) in a mixed solvent of EtOH (2 mL) and conc. HCl (2 mL) was refluxed for 2 h. The resulting solution was allowed to cool to rt and concentrated under reduced pressure. The obtained solid was evaporated with toluene (2x) to yield compound **2D** (0.25g) as a solid.

10    **2E. 4-Isocyanato-5,6,7,8-tetrahydronaphthalene-1-carbonitrile**



To a stirring suspension of compound **2D** (0.10 g, 0.48 mmol) and NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (0.404 g, 4.80 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (4 mL) cooled to 0 °C was rapidly added a solution of phosgene (20%) in toluene (0.95 mL, 4.32 mmol). After  
15    addition, the mixture was stirred at rt for 2 h, then filtered to remove the solid. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure, the resulting solid residue dried under vacuum for 1 h to afford compound **2E** (95 mg) as a light yellow solid.

20    **2F. (7R,7aS)-4-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydronaphthalene-1-carbonitrile**

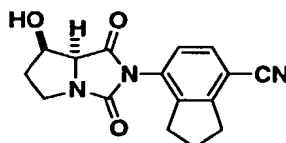
To a suspension of compound **1E** (0.145 g, 0.56 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (2 mL) cooled at 0 °C was added *i*-Pr<sub>2</sub>NEt (0.12 mL, 0.69 mmol). After stirring at 0 °C for 20 min, compound **2E** (95 mg, 0.48 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (1 mL) solution  
25    was added, along with 4 Å molecular sieves (0.5 g) and the resulting mixture



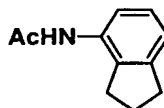
- stirred at rt until urea formation was complete (~ 2 h). To the mixture was then added DBU (0.15 mL, 1.0 mmol), the resulting brown colored suspension was stirred vigorously at rt until hydantoin formation was complete (~ 15 h). The reaction mixture was loaded on a silica gel column, eluted with 40% EtOAc/hexane, and 5% MeOH in EtOAc/hexane (1:1) to afford 128 mg of the title compound as a white solid. HPLC: 99% at 2.42 min (retention time) (Conditions: Phenom. Luna C18 (4.6 x 50 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B; 4 min gradient (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>), Flow rate at 4 mL/min., UV detection at 220 nm).
- Chiral HPLC: retention time = 9.01 min (99%); Conditions: (CHIRALPAK<sup>®</sup> OD column 4.6 x 250 mm; 25% isopropanol in hexane over 30 min at flow rate 1.0 mL/min, UV detection at 220 nm); MS (ES) *m/z* 312 [M+1]<sup>+</sup>

### Example 3

- (7*R*,7*aS*)-7-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-*c*]imidazol-2-yl)-indan-4-carbonitrile



- 3A. *N*-Indan-4-yl-acetamide



- A suspension of commercially available 4-nitroindane (10 g, 61.3 mmol) and 10% Pd/C (1 g) in MeOH (200 mL) was stirred vigorously under an atmosphere of hydrogen overnight at rt. The reaction was filtered through a pad of Celite<sup>®</sup> and concentrated, and residual solvent was removed by combining

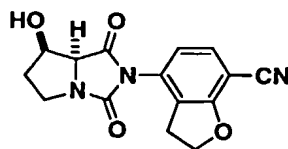
the reaction with toluene followed by evaporation. The crude reaction was taken up in pyridine (100 mL), and Ac<sub>2</sub>O (20 mL) was added and the reaction stirred for 16 h at rt. The reaction was evaporated and the crude product was purified by flash chromatography (5% MeOH in EtOAc/hexane(1:1) to give the title compound (9.12 g).

**3B. (7R,7aS)-7-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)indan-4-carbonitrile**

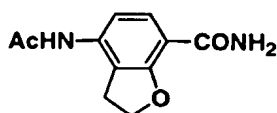
Compound **3B** as a white solid was prepared from compound **3A** by procedures analogous to those described in Example 2. HPLC: 97% at 2.75 min (retention time) (Conditions: YMC S5 ODS (4.6 x 50 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B; 4 min gradient; (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>); Flow rate at 4 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm). LC/MS *m/z* 298 [M+1]<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 4**

**(7R,7aS)-4-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-7-carbonitrile**



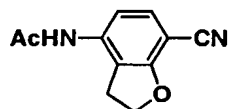
**4A. 4-Acetylamino-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-7-carboxylic acid amide**



Ammonia gas was bubbled through a solution of 4-acetylamino-2,3-dihydro-benzofuran-7-carboxylic acid methyl ester (12 g, 51 mmol, prepared as described in Takuji Kakigami et al, *Chem. Pharm. Bull*, **46** (1), 42-52, (1998)) in CH<sub>3</sub>OH (200 mL) in a pressure bottle at 0-5 °C until the solution was saturated. The bottle was sealed and stirred at 60 °C overnight. After cooling to 0-5 °C, the reaction mixture was charged one more time with NH<sub>3</sub> gas, then the sealed bottle stirred at 60 °C for another 24 h. After cooling to rt, white precipitates were collected by filtration, and dried under vacuum to furnish the title compound (10.5 g) as a white solid.

10

**4B. N-(7-Cyano-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-4-yl)-acetamide**



To a suspension of compound **4A** (3.5g, 16 mmol) in THF (64 mL) at 0 °C under Ar was added pyridine (6.5 mL, 80 mmol), followed by

trifluoroacetic anhydride (5.6 mL, 40 mmol) dropwise. After addition, the reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 5 min, then pored into H<sub>2</sub>O (50 mL), extracted with EtOAc (3 x 100 mL). The combined EtOAc extracts were washed with brine, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), and concentrated under reduced pressure to give a crude product, which was purified by crystallization from MeOH-EtOAc-Hexane to furnish the title compound (2.3 g) as a white solid.

20

**4C. (7R,7aS)-4-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-7-carbonitrile**

The title compound as a white solid was prepared from compound **4B** by procedures analogous to those described in Example 2 (from **2D** to **2F**). HPLC: 100% at 3.43 min (retention time) (Conditions: Zorbax SB C18 (4.6 x 75 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B, 8 min gradient (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1%

25

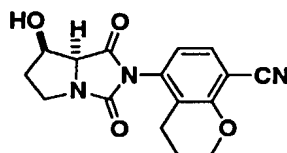
H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> ). Flow rate at 2.5 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm.). Chiral HPLC: retention time = 13.69 min (100%); Conditions: OD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 25% isopropanol in hexane for 30 min at 1 mL/min. MS (ES) *m/z* 300 [M+1]<sup>+</sup>.

5

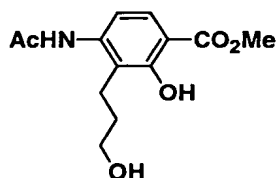
### Example 5

#### (7R,7aS)-5-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)- chroman-8-carbonitrile

10



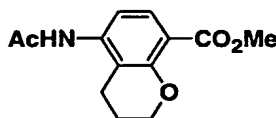
#### 15 **5A. 4-Acetylamino-2-hydroxy-3-(3-hydroxypropyl)-benzoic acid, methyl ester**



To a suspension of 4-acetylamino-3-allyl-2-hydroxy-benzoic acid methyl ester (2.49 g, 10 mmol, prepared as described in Takuji Kakigami *et. al.*, *Chem. Pharm. Bull.*, **46** (1), 42-52, (1998)) in THF (10 mL) at 0 °C under Argon was added a 0.5 M solution of 9-BBN in THF (80 mL, 40 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 40 min, then at rt for 2 h. The reaction mixture was then cooled to 0 °C, and 1 N aqueous NaOH (25 mL) was added dropwise over 5 min, followed by 30% aqueous H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> (20 mL) over 5 min.

After addition, the reaction mixture was stirred at rt for 2 h, then extracted with EtOAc (3 x 60 mL). The combined EtOAc extracts were washed with brine, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), and concentrated under reduced pressure to give a crude product, which was chromatographed (silica gel) eluting with 30% to 80% EtOAc/hexane to afford the title compound (1.82 g) as a foam.

**5B. 5-Acetylaminochroman-8-carboxylic acid, methyl ester**



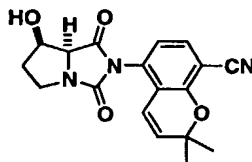
To a solution of compound **5A** (1.80 g, 6.7 mmol) and Ph<sub>3</sub>P (1.94 g, 7.4 mmol) in THF (30 mL) cooled at 0 °C was added dropwise DEAD (1.17 mL, 7.4 mmol). After addition, the reaction mixture was stirred at rt for 2 h, then concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed (silica gel) eluting with 50% to 100% EtOAc/hexane to furnish the title compound (1.3 g) as a white solid.

**5C. (7R,7aS)-5-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)chroman-8-carbonitrile**

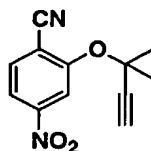
The title compound was prepared from compound **5B** and isolated as a white solid by procedures analogous to those described in Example 4. HPLC: 100% at 3.58 min (retention time) (Conditions: Zorbax SB C18 (4.6 x 75 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B, 8 min gradient. (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>). Flow rate at 2.5 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm.). Chiral HPLC: retention time = 12.35 min (99%); Conditions: OD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 25% isopropanol in hexane for 30 min at 1 mL/min. MS (ES) *m/z* 314 [M+1]<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 6****(7R,7aS)-5-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-  
2,2-dimethyl-2H-chromene-8-carbonitrile**

5

**6A. 2-(1,1-Dimethylprop-2-ynyloxy)-4-nitrobenzonitrile**

10



15

To a solution of commercially available 2-methyl-3-butyn-2-ol (0.28 mL, 2.9 mmol) in anhydrous CH<sub>3</sub>CN (1.5 mL) cooled to -5 °C was added DBU (0.56 mL, 3.7 mmol) followed by addition of trifluoroacetic anhydride (0.41 mL, 2.9 mmol) over 25 min while maintaining the reaction temperature below 2 °C. After the addition, the reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 30 min before using in the following reaction.

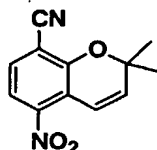
20

To a solution of 2-hydroxy-4-nitro-benzonitrile (413.6 mg, 2.52 mmol, prepared as described in Yasubiro Imakura et al, *Chem. Pharm. Bull*, **40** (7), 1691-1696, (1992)) in CH<sub>3</sub>CN (1.5 mL) cooled to -5 °C was added DBU (0.48 mL, 3.2mmol) and CuCl<sub>2</sub>•2H<sub>2</sub>O (2 mg), followed by addition of a solution of trifluoroacetate prepared above over 30 min while maintaining the reaction temperature below 0 °C. After addition, the reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 2 h, then concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was partitioned between EtOAc (100 mL) and water (30 mL), and the separated organic layer

washed with 1 N aqueous HCl (2 x 20 mL), 1 N aqueous NaOH (20 mL), 1 N aqueous NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine, then dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude product was chromatographed (silica gel) eluting with 0% to 50% EtOAc/hexane to furnish the title compound (280 mg, 48%).

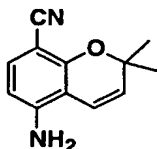
5

**6B. 2,2-Dimethyl-5-nitro-2H-chromene-8-carbonitrile**



A solution of compound 6A (270 mg, 1.17 mmol) in *N,N*-diethylaniline (1 mL) was heated to 185 °C for 3 h. After cooling to rt, the reaction mixture  
10 was chromatographed (silica gel) eluting with 0-50% EtOAc/hexane to afford the title compound (230 mg).

**6C. 5-Amino-2,2-dimethyl-2H-chromene-8-carbonitrile**



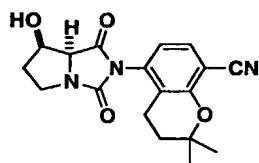
To a stirred solution of compound 6B (230 mg, 1 mmol) in EtOAc (5 mL) was added SnCl<sub>2</sub> · 2H<sub>2</sub>O (780 mg, 3.5 mmol). The resulting mixture was stirred at rt for 20 h, then saturated aqueous K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> was added. After stirring for 30 min, the reaction was treated with solid K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (550 mg). The resulting suspension was stirred at rt for another 2 h, and then filtered. The filtrate was  
20 concentrated under reduced pressure to give a crude product, which was chromatographed (silica gel) eluting with 20% to 60% EtOAc/hexane to afford the title compound (160 mg) as a light yellow oil.

**6D. (7R,7aS)-5-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-2,2-dimethyl-2H-chromene-carbonitrile**

The title compound was prepared from compound **6C** by procedures analogous to those described in Example 2 (2E to 2F). HPLC: 100% at 4.48 min (retention time) (Conditions: Zorbax SB C18 (4.6 x 75 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B, 8 min gradient. (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>). Flow rate at 2.5 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm). Chiral HPLC: retention time = 9.37 min (99%); Conditions: OD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 25% isopropanol in hexane for 30 min at 1 mL/min. MS (ES) *m/z* 340 [M+1]<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 7**

**(7R,7aS)-5-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-2,2-dimethylchroman-8-carbonitrile**



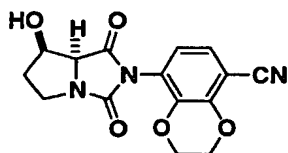
A suspension of compound **6D** (50 mg, 0.15 mmol) and 5% Pd/C (10 mg) in EtOH (3 mL) was stirred at rt under an atmosphere of hydrogen for 2 h. The reaction mixture was then filtered, and the filtrate concentrated under reduced pressure to give a crude product, which was purified by crystallization from hot CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>-hexane to give the title compound (36 mg) as a white solid. HPLC: 99% at 4.52 min (retention time) (Conditions: Zorbax SB C18 (4.6 x 75 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B, 8 min gradient. (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>). Flow rate at 2.5 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm.). Chiral HPLC: retention time = 8.72 min



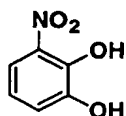
(99%); Conditions: OD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 25% isopropanol in hexane for 30 min at 1 mL/min. MS (ES)  $m/z$  342  $[M+1]^+$ .

### Example 8

5     (7*R*,7*aS*)-8-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-*c*]imidazol-2-yl)-2,3-dihydrobenzo[1,4]dioxane-5-carbonitrile

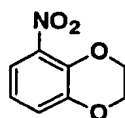


10    8A. 3-Nitrocatechol



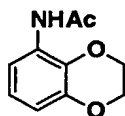
To a solution of catechol (5 g, 45 mmol) in Et<sub>2</sub>O (187 mL) cooled to 0  
15    °C was added dropwise fuming HNO<sub>3</sub> (2 mL). After addition, the reaction was  
allowed to stand at rt overnight, and the Et<sub>2</sub>O was removed by evaporation  
under reduced pressure. The residue was triturated with pentane (3x), and the  
combined organics were dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), filtered, and concentrated under  
reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed (silica gel) eluting with  
20    10% - 20% EtOAc/hexane to give the title compound (2.94 g).

### 8B. 5-Nitrobenzo[1,4]dioxane



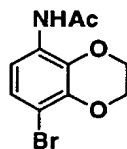
To a solution of compound **8A** (3.0 g, 19.4 mmol) in DMF (40 mL) was added CsF (14.7 g, 96.8 mmol), followed by dibromoethane (1.84 mL, 21.3 mmol). The mixture was heated to 110 °C for 1.5 h, then cooled to rt, partitioned between water and Et<sub>2</sub>O. The separated Et<sub>2</sub>O layer was washed with water, saturated aqueous NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed (silica gel) eluting with 5% MeOH in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> to afford the title compound (0.73 g).

**8C. N-(Benzo[1,4]dioxan-5-yl)-acetamide**



Compound **8C** was prepared from **8B** by procedures analogous to those described in Experiment 3A and 2A.

**8D. N-(8-Bromobenzo[1,4]dioxan-5-yl)-acetamide**



To a solution of compound **8C** (0.80 g, 4.15 mmol) in chloroform (2.4 mL) cooled to -20 °C was slowly added a solution of bromine (0.22 mL, 4.35 mmol) in chloroform (1 mL) so that the reaction temperature was maintained below -10 °C. The reaction was stirred at 0 °C for 5 min, and then quenched immediately with water. The mixture was extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (3x), the combined extracts washed with saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was

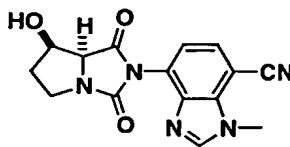
chromatographed (silica gel) eluting with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> to afford the title compound (0.98 g).

**8E. (7R,7aS)-8-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)benzo[1,4]dioxane-5-carbonitrile**

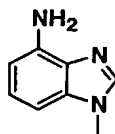
The title compound (32 mg) was prepared from compound **8D** and isolated as a white solid by procedures analogous to those described in Example 2 (**2C** to **2F**). mp 196-197 °C; HPLC: 99% at 12.31 min (retention time) (CHIRALPAK<sup>®</sup> OD column 4.6 x 250 mm; 25% isopropanol in hexane over 30 min, 1 mL/min, UV detection at 220 nm); MS (ES) *m/z* 322 [M+1]<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 9**

**(7R,7aS)-7-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carbonitrile**



**9A. 1-Methyl-1H-benzimidazol-4-ylamine**

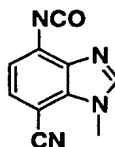


A suspension of 1-methyl-4-nitro-1H-benzimidazole [2.1 g, 12 mmol, prepared as described in Viktor Milata *et. al.*, *Org. Prep. Proced. Int.* 25 (6), 703-704 (1993)] and 5% Pd/C (0.21 g) in EtOH (40 mL) was vigorously stirred under an atmosphere of hydrogen at rt overnight. The reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate concentrated under reduced pressure to afford the title compound (1.65 g).

**9B. 7-Amino-3-methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carbonitrile**

5

The title compound was prepared from compound **9A** by procedures analogous to those described in Experiment 2 (**2A** to **2D**).

**9C. 7-Isocyanato-3-methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carbonitrile**

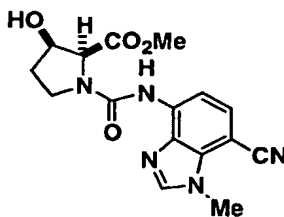
10

To a suspension of compound **9B** (240 mg, 1.39 mmol) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (10 mL) under Argon was added  $\text{Et}_3\text{N}$  (0.97 mL, 6.95 mmol). The resulting suspension was stirred at 0 °C for 15 min, then a solution of phosgene (20%) in toluene (1.4 mL, 2.8 mmol) was added. After the addition, the mixture was stirred at rt for 2 h, then concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting solid residue was dried under vacuum for 1 h to afford the title compound, which was used immediately in the preparation of compound **9D**.

15

**9D. (3R,2aS)-1-(7-Cyano-1-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-4-ylcarbamoyl)-3-hydroxypyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid methyl ester**

20



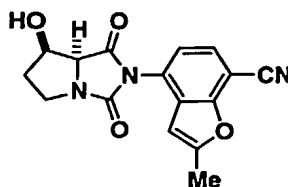
To a suspension of **1E** (600 mg, 1.67 mmol) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (4 mL) at 0 °C was added *i*- $\text{Pr}_2\text{NEt}$  (0.35 mL, 2.0 mmol). After 5 min, a suspension of compound **9C** (1.37 mmol) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (3 mL) was added, followed by 4 Å molecular sieves (~ 1.0 g). The resulting mixture was stirred at rt for 3 h, and then concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude product was chromatographed (silica gel) eluting with 4-6% MeOH in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  to afford the title compound (250 mg) as a light yellow solid.

**9E. (7R,7aS)-7-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methyl-3H-benzimidazole-4-carbonitrile**

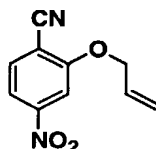
To a suspension of compound **9D** (51.5 mg, 0.15 mmol) in 1,2-dichloroethane (1 mL) at rt was added DBU (34  $\mu\text{L}$ , 0.23 mmol), along with 4 Å molecular sieves (~ 0.2 g). The resulting mixture was stirred at rt for 20 h, then concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude product was chromatographed (silica gel) eluting with 4-6% MeOH in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  to give the title compound (25 mg) as a white solid. HPLC: 98% at 2.52 min (retention time) (Conditions: Zorbax SB C18 (4.6 x 75 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B, 8 min gradient. (A = 90%  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  - 10% MeOH - 0.1%  $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$  and B = 10%  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  - 90% MeOH - 0.1%  $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$ ); Flow rate at 2.5 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm.). Chiral HPLC: retention time = 62.5 min (98%); Conditions: OD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 45% isopropanol in hexane for 90 min at 1 mL/min. MS (ES)  $m/z$  312  $[\text{M}+1]^+$ .

**Example 10****4-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydro-pyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-2-methylbenzofuran-7-carbonitrile**

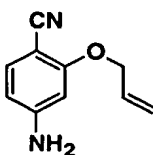
5

**10A. 2-Allyloxy-4-nitrobenzonitrile**

10



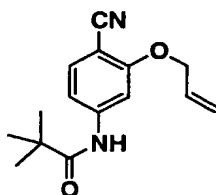
To a solution of 2-hydroxy-4-nitro-benzonitrile [164 mg, 1.0 mmol, prepared as described in Yasubiro Imakura *et. al. Chem. Pharm. Bull.* **40** (7), 1691-1696 (1992)] in anhydrous DMF (2 mL) was added allyl bromide (0.11 mL, 1.3 mmol), followed by K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (166 mg, 1.2 mmol). The resulting suspension was heated to 50 °C under Argon for 4 h. After cooling to rt, the reaction mixture was poured into ice/water, and extracted with EtOAc (3x). The combined EtOAc extracts were washed with brine, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude product was chromatographed (silica gel) eluting with 30% to 60% EtOAc/hexane to furnish the title compound (160 mg, 80% yield) as a light yellow solid.

**10B. 2-Allyloxy-4-aminobenzonitrile**

The title compound (1.70 g) as a light yellow solid was prepared from compound **10A** (2.04 g, 10 mmol) by procedures analogous to those described in Experiment 6C.

5

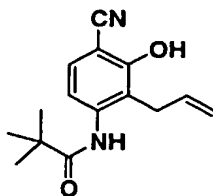
**10C. *N*-(3-Allyloxy-4-cyanophenyl)-2,2-dimethylpropionamide**



To a solution of **10B** (1.9 g, 10.9 mmol) in anhydrous  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (16 mL) cooled at 0 °C was added 1 N aqueous NaOH solution (16.4 mL, 16.4 mmol), followed by pivaloyl chloride (1.9 mL, 15.3 mmol). After the addition, the reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 2 h, then concentrated under reduced pressure to remove most of the  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  solvent. The remaining residue was diluted with water, and the resulting precipitate collected by filtration, washed with water, hexane, and dried under vacuum to furnish the title compound as a light brown solid (2.6 g).

15

**10D. *N*-(2-Allyl-4-cyano-3-hydroxyphenyl)-2,2-dimethylpropionamide**

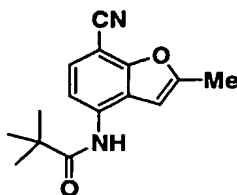


20

A solution of compound **10C** (1.5 g, 5.8 mmol) in NMP (7 mL) was heated to 220 °C for 3 h. After cooling to rt, the reaction mixture was poured into ice/water, and extracted with EtOAc (3x). The combined EtOAc extracts were washed with brine, dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ), and concentrated under reduced

pressure. The crude product was chromatographed (silica gel) eluting with 0% to 50% EtOAc/hexane to furnish the title compound (0.7 g).

**10E. N-(7-Cyano-2-methyl-benzofuran-4-yl)-2,2-dimethylpropionamide**



5

To a solution of compound **10D** (0.5 g, 1.94 mmol) in a mixed solvent of DMF (2.5 mL) and water (1.9 mL) was added Cu(OAc)<sub>2</sub> (1.057 g, 5.82 mmol), followed by a 10 M aqueous solution of LiCl (0.58 mL, 5.8 mmol) and PdCl<sub>2</sub> (34.3 mg, 0.194 mmol). The resulting suspension was heated to 100 °C for 1 h. After cooling to rt, the reaction mixture was poured into ice/water, and extracted with EtOAc (3x). The combined EtOAc extracts were washed with brine, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude product was chromatographed (silica gel) eluting with 10% to 50% EtOAc/hexane to furnish the title compound (0.3 g) as a white foam.

15

**10F. (7R,7aS)-4-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-2-methylbenzofuran-7-carbonitrile**

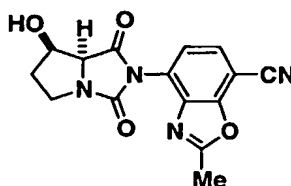
The title compound was prepared from compound **10E** by procedures analogous to those described in Experiment 2 (**2D** to **2F**). HPLC: 99% at 4.2 min (retention time) (Conditions: Zorbax SB C18 (4.6 x 75 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B, 8 min gradient. (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>); Flow rate at 2.5 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm). Chiral HPLC: retention time = 10.99 min (99%); Conditions: OD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 25% isopropanol in hexane for 30 min at 1 mL/min. MS (ES) *m/z* 312 [M+1]<sup>+</sup>.

25

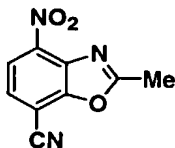


**Example 11****(7R,7aS)-4-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-2-methylbenzoxazole-7-carbonitrile**

5

**11A. 3-Amino-2-hydroxy-4-nitro-benzonitrile**

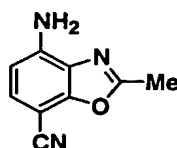
10 To a solution of 2-hydroxy-4-nitro-benzonitrile [1.0 g, 6.1 mmol, prepared as described in Yasubiro Imakura *et. al. Chem. Pharm. Bull.* **40** (7), 1691-1696 (1992)] in DMSO (60 mL) was added trimethylhydrazinium iodide (1.23 g, 6.09 mmol), followed by sodium *tert*-pentoxyde (2.01 g, 6.09 mmol). The mixture was stirred at rt overnight, and then partitioned between 10% HCl  
15 and ether. The separated ether layer was washed with H<sub>2</sub>O, brine, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), and concentrated under reduced pressure to furnish the title compound (0.78 g) as a brown solid.

**11B. 2-Methyl-4-nitro-benzoxazole-7-carbonitrile**

20

To a solution of **11A** (0.2 g, 1.12 mmol) in xylene (6 mL) was added triethyl orthoacetate (0.62 mL, 3.35 mmol) and pyridinium *p*-toluenesulfonate (0.04 g, 1.12 mmol). The mixture was refluxed for 3 h, then allowed to cool to rt and partitioned between H<sub>2</sub>O and EtOAc. The separated EtOAc layer was concentrated under reduced pressure and the residue was chromatographed eluting with 20% EtOAc in hexane to afford compound **11B** (0.16 g) as a solid.

**11C. 4-Amino-2-methylbenzoxazole-7-carbonitrile**



10

To a solution of **11B** (0.16 g, 0.79 mmol) in EtOAc (2 mL) was added iron powder (0.1 g), followed by 10% aqueous AcOH (2 mL). The mixture was stirred at 60 °C for 2 h, then allowed to cool to rt and partitioned between saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and EtOAc. The separated EtOAc layer was concentrated under reduced pressure to give the title compound (0.14 g) as a solid.

15

**11D. (7*R*,7*aS*)-4-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydro-pyrrolo[1,2-*c*]imidazol-2-yl)-2-methylbenzoxazole-7-carbonitrile**

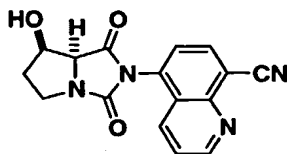
The title compound was prepared from **11C** by procedures analogous to those described in Example 2 (**2E** to **2F**) to give the product as a white foam. HPLC: 99% pure at 10.55 min (retention time) (CHIRALPAK<sup>®</sup> OD column 4.6 x 250 mm; 25% isopropanol in hexane over 30 min, 1 mL/min, monitoring at 220 nm); MS (ES) *m/z* 313 [M+1]<sup>+</sup>.

20

**Example 12**

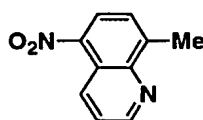
25

**(7R,7aS)-5-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)quinoline-8-carbonitrile**



5

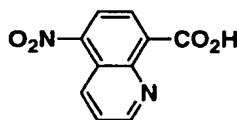
**12A. 8-Methyl-5-nitroquinoline**



To a solution of commercially available 8-methylquinoline (5.0 g, 34 mmol) in concentrated H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> (19 mL) at 0 °C was added portionwise KNO<sub>3</sub> (4.29 g, 42.4 mmol). After the addition, the reaction was stirred at rt for 17 h, then poured into ice/water and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 100 mL). The aqueous layer was basified to pH = 9 with solid Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> and extracted with EtOAc (2 x 100 mL). The combined extracts were washed with brine, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed (silica gel) to yield the title compound (5.98 g, 94%) as a light yellow solid. LC/MS *m/z* 189 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

15

**12B. 5-Nitroquinoline-8-carboxylic acid**

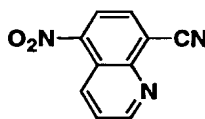


20

Compound 12A (1.0 g, 5.3 mmol) was dissolved in concentrated H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> (7 mL), cooled to 0 °C, and then CrO<sub>3</sub> (2.12 g, 21.3 mmol) was added portionwise over 30 min. After the addition, the reaction mixture was warmed

to rt and then heated to 80 °C for 1 h. After cooling to rt, the reaction was diluted with water, basified with 15% aqueous NaOH, then reacidified to pH = 3 with AcOH, and extracted with EtOAc (4 x 100 mL). The combined EtOAc extracts were washed with brine, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to yield the title compound (760 mg, 66%) as a yellow solid. LC/MS *m/z* 219 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

### 12C. 5-Nitroquinoline-8-carbonitrile



10

To a suspension of compound **12B** (600 mg, 2.75 mmol) in anhydrous THF (25 mL) cooled to -15 °C was added Et<sub>3</sub>N (0.46 mL, 3.3 mmol), followed by a dropwise addition of ethyl chloroformate (0.33 mL, 3.44 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at -15 °C for 30 min, then NH<sub>3</sub> gas was bubbled into the reaction for 5 min followed by warming of the reaction to rt for 1h. The solvent was evaporated to give 850 mg (>100%) of the amide as a yellow solid which was carried on to the next step without further purification. The amide (850 mg) was dissolved in pyridine (25 mL), and imidazole (377 mg, 5.49 mmol) was added. The mixture was cooled to -30 °C under nitrogen, POCl<sub>3</sub> (1.01 mL, 10.7 mmol) was added and the reaction was warmed to 0 °C for 30 min, and then evaporated to dryness. The residue was chromatographed (silica gel) eluting with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> to afford the title compound (416 mg, 76%, 2 steps). LC/MS *m/z* 200 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

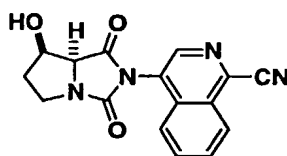
25

### 12D. (7*R*,7*aS*)-5-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-*c*]imidazol-2-yl)-quinoline-8-carbonitrile

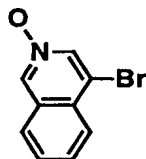
The title compound was synthesized from compound **12C** by procedures analogous to those described in Experiment 3A and Experiment 2 (**2E** to **2F**). 99.8% at 2.05 min (retention time) (Conditions: YMC S5 ODS (4.6 x 50 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B; 4 min gradient; (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>); Flow rate at 4 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm). LC/MS *m/z* 309 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

### Example 13

#### (7R,7aS)-4-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)isoquinoline-1-carbonitrile

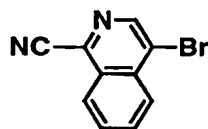


#### 13A. 4-Bromoisoquinoline 2-oxide



A solution of 4-bromoisoquinoline (4.16 g, 18.6 mmol) in chloroform (100 mL) was added dropwise over 1 h to a solution of 70% *m*CPBA (12.4 g, 50.3 mmol) in chloroform (100 mL) at rt. After stirring 18 h, the reaction mixture was washed with 1 N NaOH (2 x 150 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford compound **13A** (4.23 g, 94%) as an off-white solid. <sup>1</sup>H NMR(400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.71 (s, 1H), 8.43 (s, 1H), 8.09 (d, 1H, *J* = 8 Hz), 7.70 (m, 3H).

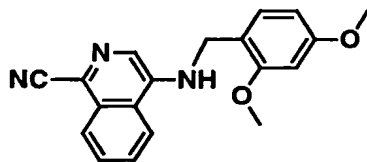
#### 13B. 4-Bromoisoquinoline-1-carbonitrile



DBU (1.67 mL, 11.2 mmol) was added to a mixture of compound **13A** (1.12 g, 5.00 mmol) and cyanotrimethylsilane (0.75 mL, 5.5 mmol) in THF (35 mL). The resulting homogeneous mixture was refluxed for 20 min. After  
5 concentrating under reduced pressure, the residue was purified by flash chromatography on a 5 x 15 cm silica gel column, eluting with 3:1 hexane:EtOAc to give compound **13B** (0.95 g, 82%) as a white powder. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.85 (s, 1H), 8.36 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.5 Hz), 8.28 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.5 Hz), 7.96 (t, 1H, *J* = 8.5 Hz), 7.89 (t, 1H, *J* = 8.5 Hz).

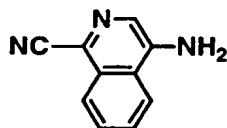
10

**13C. 4-(2,4-Dimethoxybenzylamino)isoquinoline-1-carbonitrile**



A mixture of compound **13B** (699 mg, 3.00 mmol) and 2,4-dimethoxybenzylamine (4.8 mL, 30 mmol) in acetonitrile (15 mL) was  
15 refluxed for 16 h. After concentration under reduced pressure, the residue was purified on a 5 x 15 cm silica gel column, eluting with 3:2 hexane:EtOAc to afford compound **13C** (290 mg, 30%) as a light yellow solid. HPLC: 1.76 min (retention time) (Phenomenex C-18, 5 micron column, 4.6 x 30 mm, eluting with 10-90% aqueous MeOH over 2 min containing 0.1% TFA, 4 mL/min,  
20 monitoring at 254 nm).

**13D. 4-Aminoisoquinoline-1-carbonitrile**



Compound **13C** (50 mg, 0.16 mmol) was treated with TFA (0.5 mL) for 1 h. The highly colored mixture was partitioned between EtOAc (30 mL) and 1 N NaOH (30 mL). After washing with brine (15 mL), the organic layer was dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and concentrated under reduced pressure to afford compound **13D** (24 mg, 92%) as a yellow solid. HPLC: 99% at 1.09 min (retention time) (Phenomenex C-18, 5 micron column, 4.6 x 30 mm, eluting with 10-90% aqueous MeOH over 2 min containing 0.1% TFA, 4 mL/min, monitoring at 254 nm). MS (ES<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 170 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

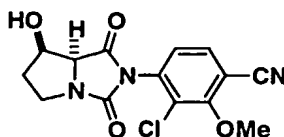
**13E. (7R,7aS)-4-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)isoquinoline-1-carbonitrile**

The title compound was synthesized from compound **13D** by procedures analogous to those described in Experiment 2E to 2F. HPLC: 97.6% at 1.54 min (retention time) (Conditions: YMC S5 C-18 (4.6 x 50 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B; 4 min gradient; (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeCN - 0.1% TFA and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeCN - 0.1% TFA ); Flow rate at 4 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm). LC/MS *m/z* 309 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

20

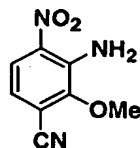
**Example 14**

**(7R,7aS)-3-Chloro-4-(7-hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-2-methoxybenzonitrile**



25

**14A. 3-Amino-2-methoxy-4-nitrobenzonitrile**



To a stirring suspension of **11A** (0.34 g, 1.86 mmol) and  $K_2CO_3$  (0.283 g, 2.05 mmol) in DMF (3 mL) was added iodomethane (0.127 mL, 2.05 mmol). After the addition, the reaction mixture was stirred at rt for 16 h, then  
5 partitioned between  $H_2O$  and  $CH_2Cl_2$ . The separated  $CH_2Cl_2$  layer was washed with water, brine, dried ( $Na_2SO_4$ ), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed (silica gel) eluting with 5% to 40% EtOAc/hexane to yield the title compound (0.22 g) as a solid.

10 **14B. 3-Chloro-2-methoxy-4-nitrobenzonitrile**



To a suspension of  $CuCl_2$  (0.11 g, 0.78 mmol) in  $CH_3CN$  (2 mL) at rt was added *tert*-butyl nitrite (0.1 mL, 0.84 mmol). After addition, the mixture  
15 was heated to 65 °C while a solution of **14A** (0.125 g, 0.647 mmol) in  $CH_3CN$  (3 mL) was slowly added. After stirring at 65 °C for 1 h, the mixture was allowed to cool to rt, and then partitioned between  $H_2O$  and  $CH_2Cl_2$ . The  $CH_2Cl_2$  layer was washed with water, brine, dried ( $Na_2SO_4$ ), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed (silica  
20 gel) eluting with 5% to 60% EtOAc/hexane to yield the title compound (0.085 g).

**14C. 4-Amino-3-chloro-2-methoxybenzonitrile**





The title compound was prepared from compound **14B** in a manner similar to that described in Experiment 11C.

5

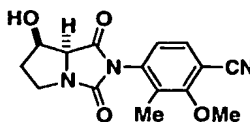
**14D. (7R,7aS)-3-Chloro-4-(7-hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-2-methoxybenzonitrile**

The title compound was prepared from **14C** by procedures analogous to those described in Example 2E to 2F. HPLC: 99% pure at 13.64 min (retention  
 10 time) (CHIRALPAK<sup>®</sup> OD column 4.6 x 250 mm; 25% isopropanol in hexane over 30 min, 1 mL/min, monitoring at 220 nm); MS (ES)  $m/z$  316  $[M+1]^+$ .

**Example 15**

15

**(7R,7aS)-5-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-2-methoxy-3-methylbenzonitrile**



20

The title compound was prepared from commercially available 2-methyl-3-nitroanisole by procedures analogous to those described in Example 3A and Example 2. HPLC: 100% at 3.63 min (retention time) (Conditions: Zorbax SB C18 (4.6 x 75 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B, 8 min gradient. (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH -

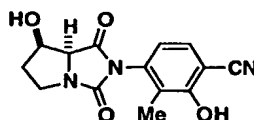
0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>); Flow rate at 2.5 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm). Chiral HPLC: retention time = 9.76 min (99%); Conditions: OD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 25% isopropanol in hexane for 30 min at 1 mL/min. MS (ES) *m/z* 302 [M+1]<sup>+</sup>.

5

### Example 16

#### (7R,7aS)-2-Hydroxy-4-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methylbenzonitrile

10

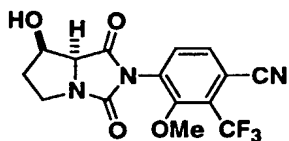


To compound **14** (90 mg, 0.3 mmol) in a 5-mL round bottom flask at 0 °C was added a 1.0 M solution of BBr<sub>3</sub> in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (1 mL, 1 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 30 min, then at rt for additional 30 min. After cooling at 0 °C, MeOH (3 mL) was added, the reaction was stirred at 0 °C for 30 min, and then concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain a crude product, which was chromatographed (silica gel) eluting with 0% to 5% MeOH in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> to yield the title compound (12 mg). HPLC: 98% at 2.83 min (retention time) (Conditions: Zorbax SB C18 (4.6 x 75 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B, 8 min gradient. (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>); Flow rate at 2.5 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm). Chiral HPLC: retention time = 16.13 min (99%); Conditions: OD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 25% isopropanol in hexane for 30 min at 1 mL/min. MS (ES) *m/z* 288 [M+1]<sup>+</sup>.

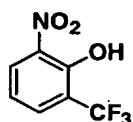
25

### Example 17

**(7R,7aS)-4-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methoxy-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzonitrile**



5 **17A. 2-Nitro-6-(trifluoromethyl)phenol**



To a solution of commercially available 2-trifluoromethylphenol (2.5 g, 15.42 mmol) in AcOH (3 mL) cooled to 0 °C was added dropwise concentrated  
10 HNO<sub>3</sub> (1.5 mL). After the addition, the mixture was stirred at at 0 °C for 5 min, at rt for 10 min, then poured into ice/water, and extracted with ether (3x). The combined ether extracts were washed with water, brine, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed (silica gel) eluting with 0% to 10% EtOAc/hexane to yield the title compound (1.4 g,  
15 44% yield).

**17B. 2-Nitro-6-(trifluoromethyl)anisole**



20 To a suspension of compound **17A** (1.4 g, 6.76 mmol) and K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (1.4 g, 10 mmol) in DMF (60 mL) was added iodomethane (0.46 mL, 7.44 mmol). After the addition, the mixture was stirred at 40 °C overnight, then cooled to rt, partitioned between ether and water. The separated ether layer was washed with water and brine, then dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and concentrated under reduced

pressure. The residue was chromatographed (silica gel) eluting with 10% EtOAc/hexane to yield the title compound (1.38 g, 92% yield).

**17C. 2-Methoxy-3-(trifluoromethyl)aniline**

5



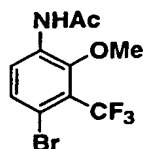
The title compound (980 mg) was prepared from compound **17B** in a manner similar to that described in Experiment **11C**.

10 **17D. 4-Bromo-2-methoxy-3-(trifluoromethyl)aniline**



To a solution of compound **17C** (200 mg, 1.05 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (2 mL) cooled to -20 °C was added dropwise a solution of 2,4,4,6-tetrabromo-2,5-cyclohexadienone (429 mg, 1.05 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (2 mL). After the addition, the reaction was stirred at rt overnight, then additional amount of 2,4,4,6-tetrabromo-2,5-cyclohexadienone (429 mg, 1.05 mmol) was added. The reaction was continued for 2 more days, then concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed (silica gel) eluting with 10%-20% EtOAc/hexane to yield the title compound (47mg, 16% yield).

**17E. N-(4-Bromo-2-methoxy-3-(trifluoromethylphenyl)acetamide**



The title compound (237 mg) was prepared from compound **17D** in a manner similar to that described in Experiment 2A.

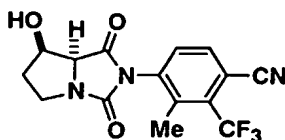
**5 17F. (7R,7aS)-4-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methoxy-2-trifluoromethylbenzonitrile**

The title compound (55 mg) was prepared from **17E** by procedures analogous to those described in Example 2 (**2C** to **2F**). HPLC: 99% at 2.25 min (retention time) (Conditions: Phenom. Lura C18 (4.6 x 50 mm); Eluted with  
 10 0% to 100% B, 4 min gradient (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% TFA and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% TFA); Flow rate at 4.0 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm.). Chiral HPLC: 99% pure at 8.98 min (retention time) (CHIRALPAK<sup>®</sup> OD column 4.6 x 250 mm; 30% isopropanol in hexane over 30 min, 1 mL/min, monitoring at 220 nm); MS (ES) *m/z* 356 [M+1]<sup>+</sup>.

15

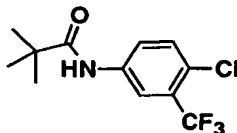
**Example 18**

**(7R,7aS)-4-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methyl-2-trifluoromethylbenzonitrile**



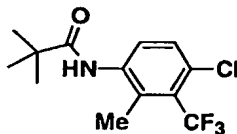
20

**18A. N-(4-Chloro-3-trifluoromethylphenyl)-2,2-dimethylpropionamide**



To a solution of commercially available 4-chloro-3-(trifluoromethyl)aniline (15.0 g, 76.7 mmol) in anhydrous THF (200 mL) cooled to 0-5 °C was added triethylamine (11.7 mL, 84.4 mmol) followed by pivaloyl chloride (10.4 mL, 84.4 mmol) over 30 min. The ice bath was removed and the mixture stirred at rt for 1 h. The mixture was diluted with ether and filtered. The filtrate was washed with water (2x) and brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated. The residue was triturated with hexanes and the solid was filtered and dried under vacuum to afford compound **18A** (20.4 g, 95%); MS (ES) *m/z* 280 [M+1]<sup>+</sup>.

**18B. N-(4-Chloro-2-methyl-3-trifluoromethylphenyl)-2,2-dimethylpropionamide**



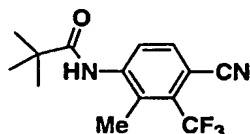
15

To a solution of compound **18A** (2.29 g, 8.19 mmol) in anhydrous THF (25 mL) cooled to 0-5 °C was added a solution of 1.6 M *n*-butyllithium in hexanes (12.3 mL, 19.7 mmol) slowly, so that the reaction temperature was maintained below 5 °C. The solution was stirred at 0-5 °C for 1.5 h. A solution of iodomethane (0.56 mL, 9.01 mmol) in petroleum ether (2 mL) was then added over 20 min while maintaining the temperature below 5 °C. The suspension was stirred at 0-5 °C for 1 h and diluted with water and ether. The aqueous layer was extracted with ether and the combined organic layers washed with brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated. The residue was

25

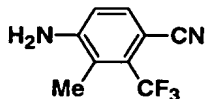
chromatographed (silica gel), eluting with  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  to afford the title compound (1.60 g, 67%). MS (ES)  $m/z$  294  $[\text{M}+1]^+$ .

18C. *N*-(4-Cyano-2-methyl-3-trifluoromethylphenyl)-2,2-dimethyl-  
5 propionamide



A suspension of compound **18B** (8.36 g, 28.5 mmol) and CuCN (4.33 g, 65.5 mmol) in anhydrous *N*-methylpyrrolidinone (85 mL) was refluxed for 38  
10 h. After cooling to rt, the suspension was poured into ice/water with stirring. The solid was filtered, washed with water and dried to yield an 85:15 mixture (7.55 g) of compounds **18C** and **18D**.

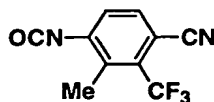
18D. 4-Amino-3-methyl-2-trifluoromethylbenzonitrile  
15



A solution of the mixed product from **18C** (7.53 g, 26.5 mmol) in 120 mL of concentrated HCl/EtOH (1:1) was refluxed for 14 h. After cooling to rt,  
20 the solution was concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was dissolved in EtOAc, washed with saturated aqueous  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (2x) and brine (1x), dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), filtered and concentrated. The residue was chromatographed (silica gel), eluting with chloroform/MeOH (98:2) to furnish the title compound (4.62 g, 87%). MS (ES)  $m/z$  201  $[\text{M}+1]^+$ .

25

18E. 4-Isocyanato-3-methyl-2-trifluoromethylbenzonitrile



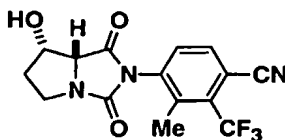
The title compound was prepared from **18D** in a manner similar to that  
 5 described in Experiment 2E.

**18F. (7R,7aS)-4-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methyl-2-trifluoromethylbenzonitrile**

The title compound was prepared (3.0 g, 53% yield) by procedures  
 10 analogous to those described in Experiment 2 F. HPLC: 98% at 2.33, 2.58 min (retention time) (Conditions: Phenom. Lura C18 (4.6 x 50 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B, 4 min gradient (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% TFA and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% TFA); Flow rate at 4.0 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm.). Chiral HPLC: retention time = 9.71 min (98%); Conditions: OD  
 15 (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 25% isopropanol in hexane for 30 min at 1 mL/min. MS (ES) *m/z* 340 [M+1]<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 19**

**(7S,7aR)-4-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methyl-2-trifluoromethylbenzonitrile**



To a stirring solution of compound **1A** (182 mg, 1 mmol) in MeOH (10 mL) was added WA21J resin (1 g) in one portion. The resulting suspension was  
 25 stirred at rt for 30 min, then filtered and the filtrate concentrated under reduced pressure to give the corresponding free amine as a colorless oil. To a solution



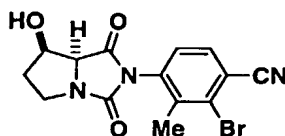
of the amine in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (2 mL) was added a solution of **18E** (0.7 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (2 mL), followed by 4 Å molecular sieves (0.5 g). The resulting suspension was stirred at rt for 20 h, and then DBU (0.2 mL, 1.5 mmol) was added. After stirring at rt for 3 days, the reaction mixture was filtered and the  
5 filtrate washed with 1 N aqueous HCl, water, brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated. The residue was chromatographed (silica gel), eluting with 5% MeOH in EtOAc/hexane (1:1) to afford the title compound (45 mg) as a white solid. HPLC: 100% at 4.32, 4.89 min (retention time) (Conditions: Zorbax SB C18 (4.6 x 75 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B, 8 min gradient (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>);  
10 Flow rate at 2.5 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm.). Chiral HPLC: retention time = 14.11 min (99%); Conditions: OD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 20% isopropanol in hexane for 30 min at 1 mL/min. MS (ES) *m/z* 340 [M+1]<sup>+</sup>.

15

### Example 20

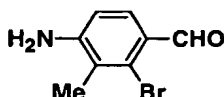
#### (7R,7aS)-2-Bromo-4-(7-hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-*c*]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methylbenzonitrile

20



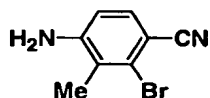
#### 20A. 4-Amino-2-bromo-3-methylbenzaldehyde

25



To a solution of commercially available 3-bromo-2-methyl-phenylamine (1.86 g, 10 mmol) in DMSO (200 mL) was added concentrated HCl (10 mL), followed by CuCl<sub>2</sub> (2.7 g, 20 mmol). The resulting suspension was heated to 90 °C for 6 h. After cooling to rt, the reaction mixture was poured into ice/water (600 mL) and adjusted to pH = 8 by dropwise addition of 10% aqueous NaOH. The resulting greenish suspension was filtered through a pad of Celite<sup>®</sup>, and the filtrate extracted with ether (3x). The combined organics were washed with brine, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated. The residue was chromatographed (silica gel), eluting with 30-70% EtOAc/hexane to furnish the title compound (0.67 g, 31%).

#### 20B. 4-Amino-2-bromo-3-methylbenzonitrile



15

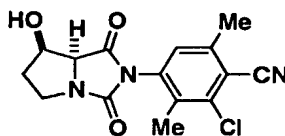
To a solution of hydroxylamine hydrochloride (109 mg, 1.58 mmol) in H<sub>2</sub>O (0.37 mL) was added compound **18A** (321 mg, 1.5 mmol), followed by pyridine (0.75 mL). The reaction was stirred at rt for 1 h, then CuSO<sub>4</sub> (75 mg, 0.3 mmol) was added, followed by Et<sub>3</sub>N (0.44 mL, 3.2 mmol) and a solution of DCC (371 mg, 1.8 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (3 mL). After addition, the reaction mixture was stirred at rt until the oxime was consumed (1 h). The reaction was then treated with formic acid (0.26 mL) and stirred at rt for another 10 min to consume the excess DCC. The reaction was filtered through a pad of Celite<sup>®</sup>, and the filtrate partitioned between CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and saturated aqueous NaHCO<sub>3</sub>. The separated organic layer was washed with brine, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated. The residue was chromatographed (silica gel), eluting with 10-50% EtOAc/hexane to furnish the title compound (260 mg, 83%).

**20C. (7R,7aS)-2-Bromo-4-(7-hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methylbenzonitrile**

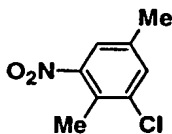
The title compound was prepared from **18B** by procedures analogous to those described in Experiment 2E and 2F. HPLC: 99% at 3.99, 4.53 min (retention time) (Conditions: Zorbax SB C18 (4.6 x 75 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B, 8 min gradient (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>); Flow rate at 2.5 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm). Chiral HPLC: retention time = 15.4 min (99%); Conditions: OD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 20% isopropanol in hexane for 30 min at 1 mL/min. MS (ES) *m/z* 351 [M+1]<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 21**

**(7R,7aS)-2-Chloro-4-(7-hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-3,6-dimethylbenzonitrile**



**21A. 1-Chloro-2,5-dimethyl-3-nitrobenzene**

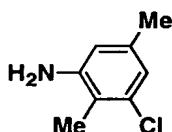


To a solution of commercially available 2-chloro-1,4-dimethylbenzene (5 mL, 37 mmol) in concentrated H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> (5 mL) cooled to 0-5 °C was added dropwise concentrated HNO<sub>3</sub> (4.7 mL, 74.6 mmol) over 20 min. After the

addition, the reaction was stirred at 0-5 °C for 30 min, then poured carefully into a mixture of ice and saturated aqueous K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> solution (40 mL), and extracted with EtOAc (3x). The combined EtOAc extracts were washed with brine, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed (silica gel), eluting with 10-30% EtOAc/hexane to give a mixture of the title compound and its regioisomer (1-chloro-2,5-dimethyl-4-nitrobenzene) (3.0 g). The mixture was further chromatographed (silica gel) eluting with 10% CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> in hexane to afford pure compound **19A** (0.2 g).

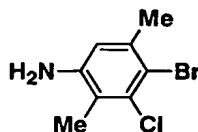
10

### **21B. 3-Chloro-2,5-dimethylaniline**



The title compound (1.70 g) was prepared from **21A** (2.15 g, 11.6 mmol) in a manner similar to that described in Experiment 6C.

### **21C. 4-Bromo-3-chloro-2,5-dimethylaniline**



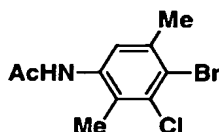
20

To a solution of compound **21B** (1.56 g, 10 mmol) in CHCl<sub>3</sub> (30 mL) cooled to 0-5 °C was added portionwise tetrabutylammonium tribromide (434 mg, 9.0 mmol). After addition, the reaction was stirred at 0-5 °C for 5 min, then quenched with saturated aqueous NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (30 mL) and 5% aqueous Na<sub>2</sub>S<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> (30 mL). The mixture was stirred at rt for 10 min, then extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>

25

(3x). The combined organics were washed with brine, dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ), filtered and concentrated. The residue was chromatographed (silica gel), eluting with 20-60% EtOAc/hexane to give the title compound (0.75 g, 32% yield).

5    **21D. *N*-(4-Bromo-3-chloro-2,5-dimethylphenyl)acetamide**



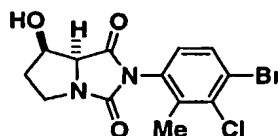
The title compound (0.82 g) was prepared from **21C** (0.74 g, 3.17 mmol) in a manner similar to that described in Experiment 2A.

**21E. (7*R*,7*aS*)-2-Chloro-4-(7-hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-*c*]imidazol-2-yl)-3,6-dimethylbenzonitrile**

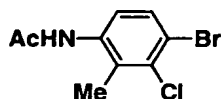
The title compound (30 mg) as a white solid was prepared by procedures analogous to those described in Experiment 2C to 2F. HPLC: 99% at 4.50, 4.87 min (retention time) (Conditions: Zorbax SB C18 (4.6 x 75 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B, 8 min gradient. (A = 90%  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  - 10% MeOH - 0.1%  $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$  and B = 10%  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  - 90% MeOH - 0.1%  $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$ ); Flow rate at 2.5 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm). Chiral HPLC: retention time = 12.07 min (99%); Conditions: OD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 20% isopropanol in hexane for 30 min at 1 mL/min. MS (ES)  $m/z$  320  $[\text{M}+1]^+$ .

**Example 22**

25    **(7*R*,7*aS*)-2-(4-Bromo-3-chloro-2-methylphenyl)-7-hydroxytetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-*c*]imidazole-1,3-dione**



**22A. *N*-(4-Bromo-3-chloro-2-methylphenyl)acetamide**

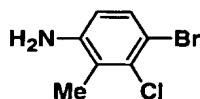


5

The title compound was prepared (2.75 g, 96% yield) from commercially available 3-chloro-2-methylaniline by procedures analogous to those described in Experiment 2A and 2B.

10

**22B. 4-Bromo-3-chloro-2-methylaniline**



15 The title compound was prepared (0.70 g, 83% yield) from **22A** in a manner similar to that described in Experiment 2D.

**22C. (7*R*,7*aS*)-2-(4-Bromo-3-chloro-2-methylphenyl)-7-hydroxy-tetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-*c*]imidazole-1,3-dione**

20 The title compound was prepared (0.71 g, 88% yield) by procedures analogous to those described in Experiment 2E and 2F. HPLC: 99% at 2.78, 2.95 min (retention time) (Conditions: Phenom. Lura C18 (4.6 x 50 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B, 4 min gradient (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% TFA and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% TFA); Flow rate at 4.0 mL/min.

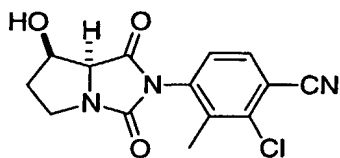
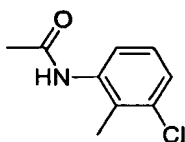
25 UV detection at 220 nm). Chiral HPLC: retention time = 7.17 min (92%);

Conditions: OD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 25% isopropanol in hexane for 30 min at 1 mL/min MS (ES)  $m/z$  360  $[M+1]^+$ .

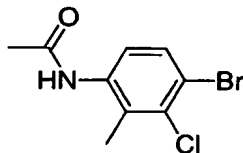
### Example 23

5

**(7*R*,7*aS*)-2-Chloro-4-(7-hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-*c*]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methylbenzonitrile**

10 **23A. 3-Chloro-2-methylphenylacetamide**

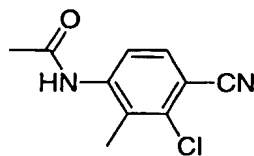
To a solution of 3-chloro-2-methylaniline (3.00 g, 21.2 mmol) in 25 mL of EtOH at rt was added acetic anhydride (2.40 mL, 25.4 mmol), and the solution was stirred at rt for 2 h. The mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure to give 3.89 g (100%) of the desired acetamide.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$  2.05 (s, 3H), 2.20 (s, 3H), 7.16 (t,  $J = 7.7, 8.3$ , 1H), 7.25 (d,  $J = 8.3$ , 1H), 7.31 (d,  $J = 8.3$ , 1H), 9.55 (s, 1H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$  15.1, 23.1, 124.4, 125.8, 126.7, 130.3, 133.7, 138.0, 168.3; HPLC a) column: Phenomenex ODS C18 4.6 x 50 mm, 4 min gradient, 10% MeOH/90%  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ /0.1% TFA to 90% MeOH/10%  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ /0.1% TFA; 1 min hold, 4 mL/min UV detection at 220 nm, 2.32 min retention time; HPLC b) column: Shimadzu Shim-Pack VP-ODS C18 4.6 x 50 mm, 4 min gradient, 10% MeOH/90%  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ /0.1% TFA to 90% MeOH/10%  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ /0.1% TFA, 1 min hold; 4 mL/min, UV detection at 220 nm, 2.20 min retention time (99%); MS (ES)  $m/z$  184  $[M+H]^+$ .

**23B. 4-Bromo-3-chloro-2-methylphenylacetamide**

To a suspension of acetamide **23A** (2.00 g, 10.9 mmol) in 15 mL of glacial  
5 AcOH cooled to approximately 15 °C was added bromine (1.67 mL, 32.7  
mmol) over 20 min. The ice bath was removed and the solution was stirred for  
2 h, poured into ice water with stirring, and the solid was then filtered and dried  
to give 2.75 g (96%) of the desired bromide. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-*d*<sub>6</sub>) δ 2.05 (s,  
3H), 2.28 (s, 3H), 7.29 (d, *J* = 8.3, 1H), 7.56 (d, *J* = 8.8, 1H), 9.60 (s, 1H); <sup>13</sup>C  
10 NMR (DMSO-*d*<sub>6</sub>) δ 16.7, 23.1, 118.1, 125.5, 130.4, 132.7, 133.4, 137.1, 168.4;  
HPLC a) column: Phenominex ODS C18 4.6 x 50 mm, 4 min gradient, 10%  
MeOH/90% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA to 90% MeOH/10% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA, 1 min hold,  
4 mL/min, UV detection at 220 nm, 2.95 min retention time; HPLC b) column:  
Shimadzu Shim-Pack VP-ODS C18 4.6 x 50 mm, 4 min gradient, 10%  
15 MeOH/90% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA to 90% MeOH/10% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA, 1 min hold,  
4 mL/min, UV detection at 220 nm, 2.87 min retention time (98%); MS (ES)  
*m/z* 263 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

**23C. 3-Chloro-4-cyano-2-methylphenylacetamide**

20

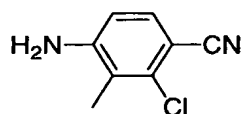


A suspension of bromide **23B** (2.70 g, 10.3 mmol) and copper cyanide (0.92 g,  
10.3 mmol) in DMF (30 mL) was heated to 150 °C for 4 h. The suspension  
was cooled, poured into water with stirring, and the solid was filtered and dried  
25 to give 1.44 g (67%) of the desired nitrile. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-*d*<sub>6</sub>) δ 2.12 (s, 3H),



2.29 (s, 3H), 7.72 (d,  $J = 8.8$ , 1H), 7.75 (d,  $J = 8.2$ , 1H), 9.73 (s, 1H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$  15.3, 23.5, 107.7, 116.5, 123.0, 130.1, 131.5, 135.7, 142.3, 168.8; HPLC a) column: Phenominex ODS C18 4.6 x 50 mm, 4 min gradient, 10% MeOH/90% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA to 90% MeOH/10% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA, 1 min  
5 hold, 4 mL/min, UV detection at 220 nm, 2.23 min retention time; HPLC b) column: Shimadzu Shim-Pack VP-ODS C18 4.6 x 50 mm, 4 min gradient, 10% MeOH/90% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA to 90% MeOH/10% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA, 1 min hold, 4 mL/min, UV detection at 220 nm, 2.13 min retention time (95%); MS (ES)  $m/z$  209  $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ .

10

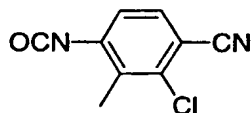
**23D. 3-Chloro-4-cyano-2-methylphenylaniline**

A solution of cyanoacetamide **23C** (9.90 g, 47.4 mmol) in 100 mL of  
15 concentrated HCl/EtOH (1:1) was refluxed 30 min. The solution was then concentrated and dried under reduced pressure to give 9.41 g (98%) of the desired aniline as the hydrochloride salt. The free base of the aniline was obtained by suspending the salt in EtOAc and washing with saturated aqueous NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution. The organic layer was then dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and  
20 concentrated under reduced pressure.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$  2.12 (s, 3H), 6.30 (s, 2H), 6.61 (d,  $J = 8.23$ , 1H), 7.36 (d,  $J = 8.23$ , 1H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$  13.8, 96.9, 112.1, 118.3, 118.85, 132.2, 135.6, 152.5; HPLC a) column: Phenominex ODS C18 4.6 x 50 mm, 4 min gradient, 10% MeOH/90% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA to 90% MeOH/10% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA, 1 min hold, 4 mL/min,  
25 UV detection at 220 nm, 2.43 min retention time; HPLC b):column: Shimadzu Shim-Pack VP-ODS C18 4.6 x 50 mm, 4 min gradient, 10% MeOH/90% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA to 90% MeOH/10% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA, 1 min hold, 4 mL/min,

UV detection at 220 nm, 2.31 min retention time (99%); MS (ES)  $m/z$  167  $[M+H]^+$ .

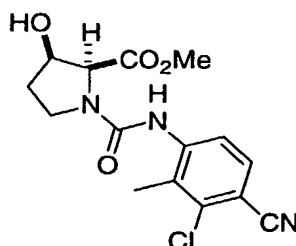
**23E. 2-Chloro-4-isocyanato-3-methylbenzonitrile**

5



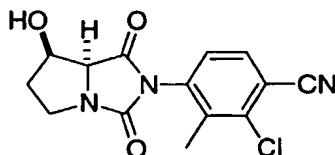
The title compound was prepared from compound **23D** in a manner similar to that described in Experiments 2D to 2E.

10 **23F. (2S,3R)-1-(3-Chloro-4-cyano-2-methylphenylcarbamoyl)-3-hydroxy-pyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid methyl ester**



To a solution of hydroxyproline compound **1F** (493 mg, 3.40 mmol) in  $CH_2Cl_2$   
15 (15 mL) was added 4 Å molecular sieves (~ 3.0 g), followed by isocyanate **23E**  
(725 mg, 3.22 mmol), and the resulting mixture was stirred at rt overnight,  
filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by  
flash chromatography (silica gel, 0.5% MeOH in EtOAc/hexane, 1:1) to afford  
the title compound (736 mg) as an off-white solid. HPLC column: YMC S-5  
20 C18 (4.6 x 50 mm), 0% to 100% B, 4 min gradient, 1 min hold (A = 90%  $H_2O$   
- 10%  $CH_3CN$  - 0.1% TFA and B = 10%  $H_2O$  - 90%  $CH_3CN$  - 0.1% TFA),  
flow rate at 4 mL/min, UV detection at 220 nm, 1.57 min retention time  
(100%); MS (ES)  $m/z$  338  $[M+H]^+$ .

**23G. (7R,7aS)-2-Chloro-4-(7-hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methylbenzonitrile.**



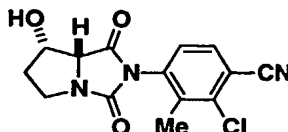
- 5 To a suspension of *cis*-3-hydroxyproline methyl ester, HCl salt (4.91 g, 27 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (100 mL) cooled to 0 °C was added *i*-Pr<sub>2</sub>NEt (4.79 mL, 27.5 mmol). After stirring at rt for 15 min, isocyanate 23E was added as a solid in one portion through a powder addition funnel, rinsing with 50 mL CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The resulting light brown solution was stirred at rt until urea formation was
- 10 complete (~ 2 h). To the mixture was then added DBU (4.6 mL, 30 mmol), and the resulting brown colored solution was stirred at rt until hydantoin formation was complete (~ 15 h). The product (4.72 g, 62%) was collected by filtration and washing with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (2x). The mother liquor was then diluted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and washed with H<sub>2</sub>O (2x), 1 N HCl (2x) and brine. After removal of
- 15 most of the solvent under reduced pressure, further product (1.2 g, 16%) was collected by filtration and washing with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (2x). Recrystallization of the 4.72 g of crude product from hot THF and hexane gave 4.5 g of analytically pure product. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-*d*<sub>6</sub>) δ 2.05-2.11 (m, 1H), 2.15-2.22 (m, 1H), 2.20, 2.24 (s, 3H), 3.29-3.33 (m, 1H), 3.59-3.68 (m, 1H), 4.42-4.50 (m, 2H),
- 20 5.64, 5.72 (d, *J* = 3.9, 3.3, 1H), 7.22, 7.51 (d, *J* = 8.3, 1H), 7.96 (d, *J* = 8.2, 1H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (DMSO-*d*<sub>6</sub>) δ 15.4, 15.6, 35.5, 35.6, 43.3, 43.4, 68.8, 69.3, 69.8, 112.9, 113.1, 115.8, 128.1, 128.7, 132.1, 136.3, 136.4, 136.9, 137.1, 158.6, 169.1, 169.6; HPLC a) column: Phenomenex ODS C18 4.6 x 50 mm, 4 min gradient, 10% MeOH/90% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA to 90% MeOH/10% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1%
- 25 TFA; 1 min hold; 4 mL/min, UV detection at 254 nm, 2.07 and 2.32 min retention time; HPLC b) column: Shimadzu Shim-Pack VP-ODS C18 (4.6 x 50 mm), 4 min gradient, 10% MeOH/90% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA to 90% MeOH/10%

H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA, 1 min hold, 4 mL/min, UV detection at 254 nm, 1.93 and 2.23 min retention time; Chiral HPLC column: Daicel Chiralcel OD 4.6 x 250 mm, isocratic, 30 min, 25% isopropanol/hexanes, 1 mL/min, UV detection at 254 nm; Shimadzu HPLC: 17.99 min retention time (>99%): Column: Hypercarb 5  $\mu$ , 4.6 x 100 mm, 25 °C, isocratic, 30 min ACN/H<sub>2</sub>O (35:65); 1 mL/min, 10.99 min retention time; MS (ES) *m/z* 306 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>. Alternatively, compound 23G can also be prepared by the following procedure: A solution of 22C (0.10 g, 0.28 mmol) and copper cyanide (0.03 g, 0.34 mmol) in DMF (1 mL) was refluxed for 3 h, cooled to rt, and diluted with water. The resulting solid was filtered, washed with water, dried and purified using preparative HPLC to afford the title compound (27 mg).

Alternatively, compound **23G** can also be prepared by the following procedures: A solution of **22C** (0.10 g, 0.278 mmol) and copper cyanide (0.03g, 0.334 mmol) in DMF (1 mL) was refluxed for 3 h, cooled to rt and diluted with water. The resulting solid was filtered, washed with water, dried and purified using preparative HPLC to afford the title compound (27 mg). HPLC: 99% at 2.06, 2.34 min (retention time) (Conditions: Phenom. Lura C18 (4.6 x 50 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B, 4 min gradient (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% TFA and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% TFA); Flow rate at 4.0 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm). Chiral HPLC: retention time = 11.04 min (99%); Conditions: OD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 25% isopropanol in hexane for 30 min at 1 mL/min. MS (ES) *m/z* 306 [M+1]<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 24****(7*S*,7*aR*)-2-Chloro-4-(7-hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-*c*]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methylbenzonitrile**

5

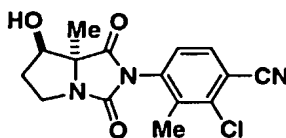


The title compound was prepared from compound 1A and compound 23E in a manner similar to that described in Example 19. mp 237-238 °C; HPLC: 100% at 2.11 and 2.36 min (retention time) (Conditions: Phenomenex Luna C18 (4.6 x 50 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B, 4 min gradient (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>); Flow rate at 4 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm). Chiral HPLC: retention time = 15.9 min (100%); Conditions: OD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 20% isopropanol in hexane for 30 min at 1 mL/min, MS (ES) *m/z* 306 [M+1]<sup>+</sup>.

15

**Example 25****(7*R*,7*aS*)-2-Chloro-4-(7-hydroxy-7*a*-methyl-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-*c*]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methylbenzonitrile**

20



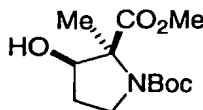
To a stirring suspension of compound 23G (600 mg, 1.96 mmol) in anhydrous THF (10 mL) at rt was added DMPU (4 mL). The resulting clear solution was cooled to -78 °C, then a 2.0 M solution of LDA in THF (1.96 mL, 3.92 mmol) was added slowly so that the reaction temperature was maintained

25

below  $-72^{\circ}\text{C}$ . The resulting dark brown solution was stirred at  $-78^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 30 min, then iodomethane (0.36 mL, 3.92 mmol) was added dropwise. After addition, the reaction was stirred at  $-78^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 30 min, then at  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 3 h. The reaction was quenched with 5% aqueous  $\text{KHSO}_4$  and extracted with EtOAc (3x). The combined extracts were washed with brine, dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ), filtered and concentrated. The residue was chromatographed (silica gel), eluting with 1% MeOH in EtOAc/ $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (1:9) to give a mixture of compound **25** and compound **26** (150 mg), which was further purified using preparative HPLC to afford the title compound (20 mg). HPLC: 99% at 4.40, 5.20 min (retention time) (Conditions: Zorbax SB C18 (4.6 x 75 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B, 8 min gradient. (A = 90%  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  - 10% MeOH - 0.1%  $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$  and B = 10%  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  - 90% MeOH - 0.1%  $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$ ); Flow rate at 2.5 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm). Chiral HPLC: retention time = 7.9 min (99%); Conditions: OD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 20% isopropanol in hexane for 30 min at 1 mL/min, MS (ES)  $m/z$  320  $[\text{M}+1]^+$ .

Alternatively, the compound of Example 25 can be prepared in the following manner

**25A. (2S,3R)-3-Hydroxy-2-methylpyrrolidine-1,2-dicarboxylic acid 1-tert-butyl ester 2-methyl ester**

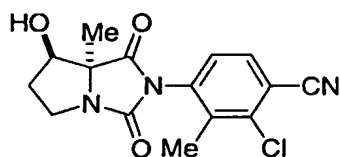


To a solution of (2S,3R)-*N*-tert-butyloxycarbonyl-3-hydroxy-2-pyrrolidinecarboxylic acid methyl ester (**1D**) (1.13 g, 4.61 mmol) in THF (73 mL) at  $-78^{\circ}\text{C}$  was slowly added a 1.8 M solution of LDA (7.70 mL, 13.86 mmol). After stirring for 1 h, iodomethane (2.87 mL, 46.10 mmol) was added,

and the reaction was stirred for 1 h at  $-78^{\circ}\text{C}$ , before warming gradually to  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 3 h, and then was stored at  $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$  overnight. After quenching with saturated aqueous  $\text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$ , water and EtOAc were added and the layers were separated. The organic layer was washed with brine, and the aqueous layer  
5 was extracted with EtOAc. The combined organics were dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified using preparative HPLC (Luna C-18, 21.2 x 250 mm, eluting with 50-90% solvent B (A = 90%  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  - 10% MeOH and B = 10%  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  - 90% MeOH) over 30 min; Flow rate at 10 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm) to provide a mixture  
10 of the starting material and its epimer as a yellow oil (490 mg) and the title compound as a yellow oil (362 mg); LC/MS  $m/z$  260  $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ .

**25B. (7R,7aS)-2-Chloro-4-(7-hydroxy-7a-methyl-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methylbenzonitrile**

15

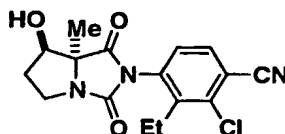


To a solution of (2S,3R)-3-hydroxy-2-methyl-pyrrolidine-1,2-dicarboxylic acid 1-*tert*-butyl ester 2-methyl ester (**25A**) (87 mg, 0.32 mmol) in  
20  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (1.3 mL) at  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$  was added Hunig's base (111 mL, 0.64 mmol). After stirring for 15 min, 2-chloro-4-isocyanato-3-methylbenzonitrile (**23A**) was added, and after an additional 10 min, the ice bath was removed. The reaction was stirred for 2 h and then diluted with water. The layers were separated and the organic layer was washed with brine, dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), filtered and  
25 concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting solid was purified using preparative HPLC (Luna C-18, 21.2 x 100 mm, eluting with 40-100% solvent B (A = 90%  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  - 10% MeOH and B = 10%  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  - 90% MeOH) over 15 min;

Flow rate at 20 mL/min; UV detection at 220 nm) to provide the title compound (67 mg) as a white film; LC/MS  $m/z$  661  $[2M+23]^+$ .

### Example 26

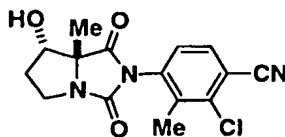
5                    (7R,7aS)-2-Chloro-3-ethyl-4-(7-hydroxy-7a-methyl-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)benzonitrile



A mixed product (150 mg) from Experiment 25 was purified using  
10    preparative HPLC to afford the title compound (50 mg). HPLC: 99% at 4.75, 5.54 min (retention time) (Conditions: Zorbax SB C18 (4.6 x 75 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B, 8 min gradient. (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>); Flow rate at 2.5 mL/min UV detection at 220 nm). Chiral HPLC: retention time = 6.4 min  
15    (99%); Conditions: OD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 20% isopropanol in hexane for 30 min at 1 mL/min, MS (ES)  $m/z$  334  $[M+1]^+$ .

### Example 27

20                    (7S,7aR)-2-Chloro-4-(7-hydroxy-7a-methyl-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methylbenzonitrile



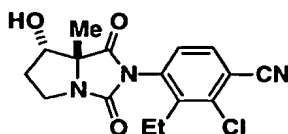


The title compound was prepared and isolated as a white solid (30 mg) from compound **24** in a manner similar to that described in Example 25. HPLC: 99% at 4.49, 5.55 min (retention time) (Conditions: Zorbax SB C18 (4.6 x 75 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B, 8 min gradient. (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>); Flow rate at 2.5 mL/min UV detection at 220 nm). Chiral HPLC: retention time = 8.1 min (99%); Conditions: OD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 20% isopropanol in hexane for 30 min at 1 mL/min, MS (ES) *m/z* 320 [M+1]<sup>+</sup>.

10

### Example 28

#### (7*S*,7*aR*)-2-Chloro-3-ethyl-4-(7-hydroxy-7*a*-methyl-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-*c*]imidazol-2-yl)benzonitrile



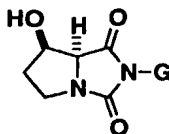
15

The title compound (35 mg) was obtained as a white solid in the reaction outlined in Example 27 by a procedure similar to that described in Example 26. HPLC: 99% at 4.79, 5.56 min (retention time) (Conditions: Zorbax SB C18 (4.6 x 75 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B, 8 min gradient. (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>); Flow rate at 2.5 mL/min UV detection at 220 nm). Chiral HPLC: retention time = 7.1 min (99%); Conditions: OD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 20% isopropanol in hexane for 30 min at 1 mL/min, MS (ES) *m/z* 334 [M+1]<sup>+</sup>.

25

### Examples 29 to 42

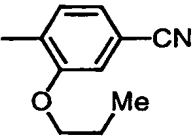
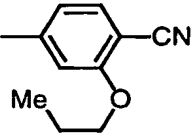
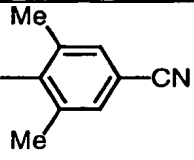
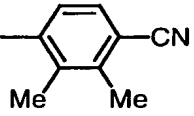
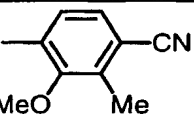
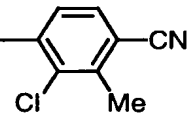
Additional compounds of the present invention were prepared by procedures analogous to those described above. The compounds of Examples 29 to 42 have the following structure:

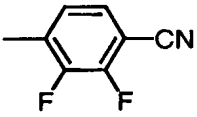
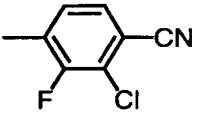
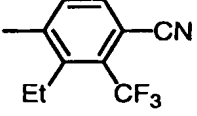
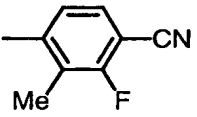
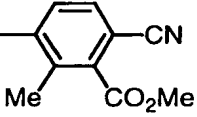


- 5 where G, the compound name, retention time, molecular mass, and the procedure employed, are set forth in **Table 1**. The chromatography techniques used to determine the compound retention times of **Table 1** are as follows: LC/MS = Phenom. Luna C18, 4.6 x 50 mm eluting with 10-90% MeOH/H<sub>2</sub>O over 4 min containing 0.1% TFA; 4 mL/min, monitoring at 220 nm The
- 10 molecular mass of the compounds listed in **Table 1**, where provided, were determined by MS by the formula  $m/z$ .

**Table 1**

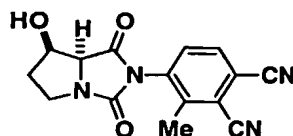
Example. No.	G	Compound Name	Retention Time (Min)/ Molecular Mass	Proced. of Ex.
29		(7 <i>R</i> ,7 <i>aS</i> )-4-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2- <i>c</i> ]imidazol-2-yl)benzonitrile	2.07 LCMS/ 258 [M+H] <sup>+</sup>	2
30		(7 <i>R</i> ,7 <i>aS</i> )-3-Ethyl-4-(7-hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2- <i>c</i> ]imidazol-2-yl)benzonitrile	2.50 LCMS/ 286 [M+H] <sup>+</sup>	2
31		(7 <i>R</i> ,7 <i>aS</i> )-4-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2- <i>c</i> ]imidazol-2-yl)-2-methoxybenzonitrile	2.35 LCMS/ 288 [M+H] <sup>+</sup>	2

Example. No.	G	Compound Name	Retention Time (Min)/ Molecular Mass	Proced. of Ex.
32		(7 <i>R</i> ,7 <i>aS</i> )-4-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2- <i>c</i> ]imidazol-2-yl)-3-propoxybenzonitrile	2.76 LCMS/ 316 [M+H] <sup>+</sup>	2
33		(7 <i>R</i> ,7 <i>aS</i> )-4-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2- <i>c</i> ]imidazol-2-yl)-2-propoxybenzonitrile	3.10 LCMS/ 316 [M+H] <sup>+</sup>	2
34		(7 <i>R</i> ,7 <i>aS</i> )-4-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxo-tetrahydro-pyrrolo[1,2- <i>c</i> ]imidazol-2-yl)-3,5-dimethylbenzonitrile	1.44 LCMS/ 286 [M+H] <sup>+</sup>	2
35		(7 <i>R</i> ,7 <i>aS</i> )-4-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2- <i>c</i> ]imidazol-2-yl)-2,3-dimethylbenzonitrile	1.79, 1.96 LCMS/ 286 [M+H] <sup>+</sup>	2
36		(7 <i>R</i> ,7 <i>aS</i> )-4-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2- <i>c</i> ]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methoxy-2-methylbenzonitrile	1.83 LCMS/ 302 [M+H] <sup>+</sup>	21
37		(7 <i>R</i> ,7 <i>aS</i> )-3-Chloro-4-(7-hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2- <i>c</i> ]imidazol-2-yl)-2-methylbenzonitrile	1.71, 2.28 LCMS/ 306 [M+H] <sup>+</sup>	2

Example. No.	G	Compound Name	Retention Time (Min)/ Molecular Mass	Proced. of Ex.
38		(7 <i>R</i> ,7 <i>aS</i> )-2,3-Difluoro-4-(7-hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2- <i>c</i> ]imidazol-2-yl)benzonitrile	3.59 LCMS/ 294 [M+H] <sup>+</sup>	2
39		(7 <i>R</i> ,7 <i>aS</i> )-2-Chloro-3-fluoro-4-(7-hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2- <i>c</i> ]imidazol-2-yl)benzonitrile	2.12 LCMS/ 310 [M+H] <sup>+</sup>	20
40		(7 <i>R</i> ,7 <i>aS</i> )-3-Ethyl-4-(7-hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2- <i>c</i> ]imidazol-2-yl)-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzonitrile	2.48, 2.79 LCMS/ 354 [M+H] <sup>+</sup>	18
41		(7 <i>R</i> ,7 <i>aS</i> )-2-Fluoro-4-(7-hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2- <i>c</i> ]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methylbenzonitrile	3.70 LCMS/ 290 [M+H] <sup>+</sup>	2
42		(7 <i>R</i> ,7 <i>aS</i> )-6-Cyano-3-(7-hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2- <i>c</i> ]imidazol-2-yl)-2-methylbenzoic acid methyl ester	1.95 LCMS/ 330 [M+H] <sup>+</sup>	2

**Example 43**

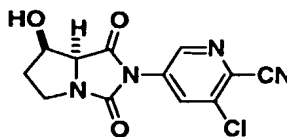
**(7S,7aR)-4-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methylphthalonitrile**



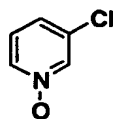
5 A solution of compound **23C** (100 mg, 0.327 mmol), CuCN (15 mg, 0.163 mmol) and CuBr (23 mg, 0.163 mmol) in DMF (1 mL) was refluxed for 8 h, cooled to rt and diluted with water. The resulting solid was filtered, washed with water, dried and purified using preparative HPLC to afford the title compound (8 mg). HPLC: 99% at 1.83 min (retention time) (Conditions: 10 Phenom. Lura C18 (4.6 x 50 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B, 4 min gradient (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% TFA and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% TFA); Flow rate at 4.0 mL/min UV detection at 220 nm). Chiral HPLC: retention time = 21.40 min (99%); Conditions: OD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 25% isopropanol in hexane for 30 min at 1 mL/min MS (ES) *m/z* 297 15 [M+1]<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 44**

**(7R,7aS)-3-Chloro-5-(7-hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)pyridine-2-carbonitrile**

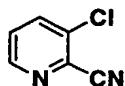


**44A. 3-Chloropyridine-*N*-oxide**

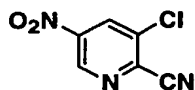


- Commercially available 3-chloropyridine (11.4 g, 100 mmol) was dissolved in AcOH (60 mL) and 30% hydrogen peroxide (15 mL) was added.
- 5 The mixture was heated to 70 °C for 12 h. The cooled mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was diluted with chloroform (50 mL) and solid potassium carbonate (20 g) was added and the mixture stirred for 1 h, after which it was filtered and concentrated to give a yellow-green oil (10.21g, 79%), which by NMR contained ~ 8% of starting material.
- 10 The oil was used directly without further purification.

#### 44B. 3-Chloro-2-cyanopyridine

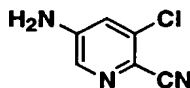


- 15 Compound **44A** (2.59 g, 20 mmol), trimethylsilylcyanide (5.95g, 60 mmol), Et<sub>3</sub>N (4.05g, 40 mmol), and acetonitrile (20 mL) were combined in a 3-necked 250-mL round-bottomed flask under nitrogen and refluxed for 6 h, at which time HPLC analysis indicated complete consumption of starting
- 20 material. The cooled reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure to give a brown semi-solid which was partitioned between 3 N aqueous Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> and CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The organic layer was washed with water, brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash chromatography using 5% Et<sub>2</sub>O/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> as eluent to give the
- 25 product **44B** as a white crystalline solid (1.84 g, 67%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 7.37 (dd, *J* = 4.7, 8.4 Hz, 1 H), 7.73 (dd, *J* = 1.4, 8.2 Hz, 1 H), 8.47 (dd, *J* = 1.3, 4.6 Hz, 1 H); LC/MS *m/z* 139 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

**44C. 3-Chloro-2-cyano-5-nitropyridine**

5 To a solution of compound **44B** (1.75g, 12.7 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (40 mL) cooled at 0-5 °C was added dropwise a CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> solution (25 mL) containing tetrabutylammonium nitrate (5.02g, 16.5 mmol) and trifluoroacetic anhydride (3.15 g, 15 mmol) over 20 min. The reaction was stirred for 2 h at 0-5 °C, warmed to rt and stirred for two days. The mixture was stirred with saturated  
10 aqueous Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> for 1 h and the organic layer was washed with brine and dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash chromatography using CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> as eluent to give the product as a yellow solid (0.43g, 18%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 8.62(d, *J* = 2.4 Hz, 1H), 9.33 (d, *J* = 2.3 Hz, 1 H); LC/MS *m/z* 183 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

15

**44D. 5-Amino-3-chloro-2-cyanopyridine**

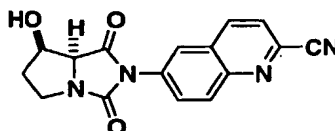
20 To a solution of Compound **44C** (0.35 g, 1.9 mmol) in 90% EtOH (10 mL) was added calcium chloride (0.06 g, 0.55 mmol), followed by iron powder (0.56 g, 10 mmol). The resulting mixture was stirred at rt overnight, then filtered through a pad of Celite<sup>®</sup>, the pad washed with EtOAc, and the filtrate concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash  
25 chromatography using 10% Et<sub>2</sub>O/ CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> to give a light-brown solid (0.13g, 43%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) 7.02 (br s, 2H), 7.28 (d, *J* = 2.2 Hz, 1 H), 8.16 (d, *J* = 2.2 Hz, 1 H); LC/MS *m/z* = 154 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

**44E. (7R,7aS)-3-Chloro-5-(7-hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)pyridine-2-carbonitrile**

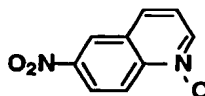
The title compound was synthesized from compound **44D** by procedures analogous to those described for Examples 2E to 2F. HPLC: 100% at 1.67 min.(retention time) (Conditions: Shim-Pak VP-ODS (4.6 x 50 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B, 4 min gradient, 1 min hold. (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>); Flow rate at 4 mL/min UV detection at 220 nm); MS(ES) *m/z* 293 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 45**

**(7R,7aS)-6-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)quinoline-2-carbonitrile**

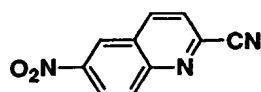


**45A. 6-Nitroquinoline-N-oxide**

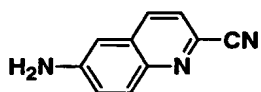


Commercially available 6-nitroquinoline (1.0 g, 5.6 mmol) was dissolved in CHCl<sub>3</sub> (30 mL) and *m*CPBA (1.76 g, 7.8 mmol) was added portionwise and the reactions stirred at rt for 48 h. The mixture was then washed with saturated aqueous NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, 1 N aqueous NaOH, and 5% aqueous NaHSO<sub>3</sub>, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to give compound **45A** (1.0 g, 93%) as a light yellow solid. LC/MS *m/z* 191 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.



**45B. 2-Cyano-6-nitroquinoline**

To a suspension of compound **45A** (400 mg, 2.1 mmol) in MeCN (15 mL) was added trimethylsilylcyanide (0.34 mL, 2.5 mmol), followed by a slow addition of Et<sub>3</sub>N (0.65 mL, 4.6 mmol). The reaction mixture was heated to 75 °C for 30 min, then cooled to rt, concentrated, dried under vacuum, and purified by silica gel flash chromatography, eluting with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> to give the title compound (150 mg, 36%) as a white solid. LC/MS *m/z* 200 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

**45C. 2-Cyano-6-aminoquinoline**

10

Compound **45B** (212 mg, 1.1 mmol) was dissolved in 30 mL of a 1:2 mixture of EtOAc and MeOH and hydrogenated at 1 atmosphere of hydrogen in the presence of 10% Pd/C (42 mg, 20 wt. %) for 1 h. The reaction was filtered, concentrated and purified by silica gel flash chromatography eluting with 2-3 % MeOH-CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> to give the title compound (142 mg, 79%) as a light yellow solid. LC/MS *m/z* 170 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

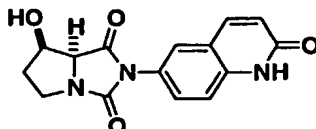
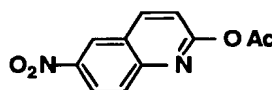
15

**45D. (7*R*,7*aS*)-6-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-*c*]imidazol-2-yl)quinoline-2-carbonitrile**

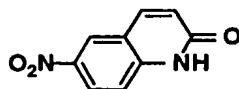
20

The title compound was prepared from **45C** by procedures analogous to those described in Experiment 2E and 2F. HPLC: 100% at 1.81 min (retention time) (Conditions: YMC S5 C18 (4.6 x 50 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B, 8 min gradient, 3 min hold. (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>); Flow rate at 2.5 mL/min UV detection at 220 nm). LC/MS *m/z* 309 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

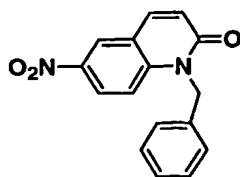
25

**Example 46****(7R,7aS)-7-Hydroxy-2-(2-oxo-1,2-dihydroquinolin-6-yl)-  
tetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazole-1,3-dione****46A. 6-Nitro-2-acetoxyquinoline**

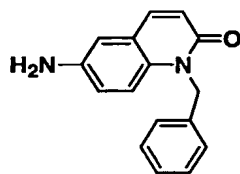
A solution of compound **45A** (564 mg, 2.96 mmol) in Ac<sub>2</sub>O (20 mL) was heated to 145 °C for 5 h. After cooling to rt, the reaction was concentrated and the residue purified by silica gel flash chromatography eluting with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> to give the title compound (227 mg, 33%) as a beige solid. LC/MS *m/z* 233 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

**46B. 6-Nitro-2-quinolone**

Compound **46A** (210 mg, 0.90 mmol) was dissolved in MeOH (10 mL), K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> was added, and the reaction was stirred at rt for 30 min. The reaction was then concentrated under reduced pressure and subsequently purified by silica gel flash chromatography eluting with 5 – 10% MeOH/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (gradient) to give the title compound (162 mg, 94%) as a pink solid. LC/MS *m/z* 191 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

**46C. 6-Nitro-*N*-benzyl-2-quinolone**

Compound **46B** (50 mg, 0.26 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (1 mL), CsF (120 mg, 0.79 mmol) and benzyl chloride (0.09 mL, 0.79 mmol) were added, and the reaction was stirred at rt for 16 h. The reaction mixture was then concentrated under reduced pressure and subsequently purified by silica gel flash chromatography eluting with 0 -5 % EtOAc/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (gradient) to give the title compound (57 mg, 77%). LC/MS *m/z* 281 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

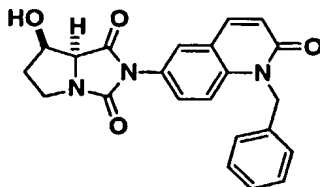
**46D. 6-Amino-*N*-benzyl-2-quinolone**

10

The title compound (34 mg) was prepared from compound **46C** in a manner similar to that described in Experiment 45C. LC/MS *m/z* 251 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

**46E. (7*R*,7*aS*)-7-Hydroxy-2-(2-oxo-1,2-dihydro-*N*-benzylquinolin-6-yl)tetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-*c*]imidazole-1,3-dione**

15



The title compound was prepared from compound **46D** by procedures analogous to those described in Experiment 2E and 2F. LC/MS  $m/z$  390  $[M+H]^+$ .

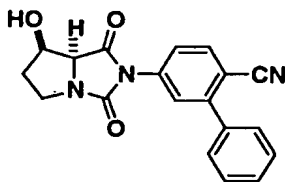
5    **46F. (7R,7aS)-7-Hydroxy-2-(2-oxo-1,2-dihydroquinolin-6-yl)tetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazole-1,3-dione**

Compound **46E** (80 mg, 0.20 mmol) was dissolved in MeOH (5 mL) and hydrogenated at 1 atmosphere of hydrogen for 24 h in the presence of 20  
10    mg  $Pd(OH)_2$ . The reaction was then filtered, concentrated under reduced pressure, and subsequently purified by silica gel flash chromatography eluting with a gradient of 5% - 10% MeOH in  $CH_2Cl_2$  to give the title compound (16 mg) as a white solid. HPLC: 98% at 0.79 min (retention time) (Conditions: YMC S5 C18 (4.6 x 50 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B, 8 min gradient, 3 min  
15    hold. (A = 90%  $H_2O$  - 10% MeCN - 0.1% TFA and B = 10%  $H_2O$  - 90% MeCN - 0.1% TFA); Flow rate at 2.5 mL/min UV detection at 220 nm). LC/MS  $m/z$  300  $[M+H]^+$ .

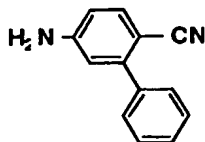
**Example 47**

20

**(7R,7aS)-5-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)biphenyl-2-carbonitrile**



25    **47A. 4-Cyano-3-phenylaniline**



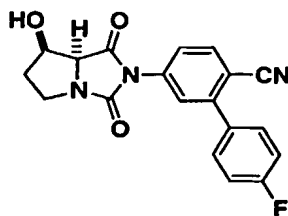
Commercially available 3-chloro-4-cyanoaniline (305 mg, 2.0 mmol) was dissolved in NMP (8 mL), and CsF (608 mg, 4.0 mmol), phenyl boronic acid (268 mg, 2.2 mmol) and dichlorobis(tricyclohexylphosphino)palladium (73mg, 0.1 mmol) were added. The reaction was then heated to 100 °C for 16 h. After cooling to rt, the reaction mixture was taken up in EtOAc, washed with water (2x), dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), concentrated under reduced pressure, and purified by silica gel flash chromatography eluting with EtOAc/hexanes (1:1) to give compound **47A** (371 mg, 96%) as a yellow solid. LC/MS *m/z* 195 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

**47B. (7R,7aS)-5-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)biphenyl-2-carbonitrile**

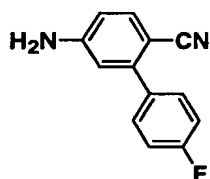
The title compound was prepared from compound **47A** by procedures analogous to those described in Experiment 2E and 2F. HPLC: 96 % at 3.24 min (retention time) (Conditions: YMC S5 C18 (4.6 x 50 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B, 8 min gradient, 3 min hold. (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>); Flow rate at 2.5 mL/min UV detection at 220 nm). LC/MS *m/z* 334 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 48**

**(7R,7aS)-4'-Fluoro-5-(7-hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)biphenyl-2-carbonitrile**



**48A. 4-Cyano-3-(4-fluorophenyl)aniline**



The title compound was prepared from commercially available 3-chloro-  
 5 4-cyanoaniline in a similar fashion to that described in Experiment 47A and  
 isolated as a yellow solid. LC/MS  $m/z$  213  $[M+H]^+$ .

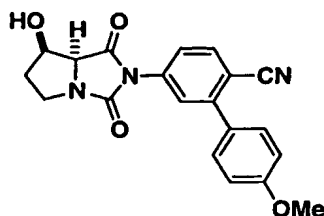
**48B. (7R,7aS)-4'-Fluoro-5-(7-hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)biphenyl-2-carbonitrile**

10

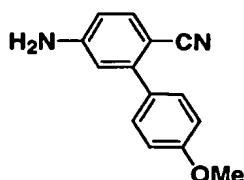
The title compound was prepared from compound **48A** by procedures  
 analogous to those described in Experiment 2E and 2F. HPLC: 99% at 3.32  
 min (retention time) (Conditions: YMC S5 C18 (4.6 x 50 mm); Eluted with 0%  
 to 100% B, 8 min gradient, 3 min hold. (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1%  
 15 H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>); Flow rate at 2.5  
 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm.). LC/MS  $m/z$  352  $[M+H]^+$ .

**Example 49**

20 **(7R,7aS)-5-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-4'-methoxybiphenyl-2-carbonitrile**



**49A. 4-Cyano-3-(4-methoxyphenyl)aniline**



5

The title compound was prepared from commercially available 3-chloro-4-cyanoaniline in a manner similar to that described in Experiment 47A and isolated as a yellow solid. LC/MS  $m/z$  225  $[M+H]^+$ .

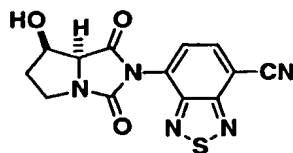
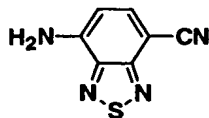
10 **49B. (7R,7aS)-5-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxo-tetrahydro-pyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-4'-methoxybiphenyl-2-carbonitrile**

The title compound was prepared from compound **49A** by procedures analogous to those described in Experiment 2E and 2F. HPLC: 96% at 3.24 min (retention time) (Conditions: YMC S5 C18 (4.6 x 50 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B, 8 min gradient, 3 min hold. (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>); Flow rate at 2.5 mL/min UV detection at 220 nm). LC/MS  $m/z$  364  $[M+H]^+$ .

20

**Example 50**

**(7R,7aR)-7-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)benzo[1,2,5]thiadiazole-4-carbonitrile**

**50A. 4-Cyano-7-amino-benzothiadiazole**

5           A solution of 2-cyano-5-nitrophenylenediamine (78 mg, 0.44 mmol, prepared as described in WO 0076501) in SOCl<sub>2</sub> (2 mL) was heated to reflux for 3 h. The resulting mixture was allowed to cool to rt and was then poured into ice/water. CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> was added, the layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted twice with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The combined organic phases were  
10   dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), concentrated under reduced pressure and purified by flash chromatography on silica gel eluting with 50% EtOAc in hexanes to give 4-cyano-7-nitrobenzothiadiazole. This material was dissolved in AcOH (2 mL) containing EtOAc (1 mL) and H<sub>2</sub>O (0.2 mL) and heated to 70 °C. At this temperature, iron powder (78 mg, 1.41 mmol) was added in one portion and the  
15   dark mixture was stirred for 20 min before cooling to rt. The reaction mixture was then filtered through a pad of Celite<sup>®</sup> eluting with EtOAc, washed with saturated Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> solution, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and concentrated under reduced pressure. Purification by flash chromatography on silica gel eluting with 20-70% EtOAc in hexanes afforded the title compound (47 mg, 67%) as a brown  
20   solid.

**50B. (7R,7aR)-7-(7-Hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)benzo[1,2,5]thiadiazole-4-carbonitrile**

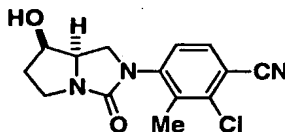
25           The title compound (12.2 mg) was prepared from compound **50A** by procedures analogous to those described in Experiment 2E and 2F. HPLC: 99% at 1.57 min (retention time) (Conditions: Phenom. Luna. (4.6 x 50 mm); Eluted



with 0% to 100% B, 4 min gradient, 1 min hold. (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% TFA and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% TFA); Flow rate at 4.0 mL/min UV detection at 220 nm). Chiral HPLC: retention time = 22.68 min (98%); Conditions: OD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 25% isopropanol in  
5 hexane for 30 min at 1 mL/min; MS (ES) *m/z* 316 [M+1]<sup>+</sup>.

### Example 51

10 (7*R*,7*aR*)-2-Chloro-4-(7-hydroxy-3-oxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-*c*]imidazol-2-yl)3-methylbenzonitrile

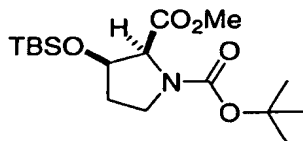


To a solution of compound **23G** (150 mg, 0.5 mmol) in anhydrous THF (12 mL) cooled to -78 °C was added dropwise 1.0 M LiEt<sub>3</sub>BH solution in THF  
15 (0.5 mL, 0.5 mmol). After addition, the reaction was stirred at -78 °C for 4 h, then quenched by addition of saturated aqueous Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (5 mL). The reaction was warmed to 0 °C, 30% H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> (~ 0.5 mL) was added, and the reaction was stirred at 0 °C for 30 min, then extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (3x). The combined extracts were washed with brine, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), filtered, and concentrated  
20 under reduced pressure overnight. The residue (~ 120 mg) was dissolved in anhydrous CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>, and to the resulting solution cooled to -78 °C was added dropwise triethylsilane (0.5 mL, 3.1 mmol), followed by boron trifluoride diethyl etherate (0.5 mL, 3.9 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at -78 °C for 2 h, then additional triethylsilane (0.3 mL, 1.88 mmol) and boron trifluoride  
25 diethyl etherate (0.3 mL, 2.35 mmol) were added, and the reaction was stirred at 0 °C overnight. The reaction was then quenched with saturated aqueous Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (10 mL), then extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (3x). The combined extracts

were washed with brine, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to give a crude product (~ 100 mg). The crude product was purified using preparative HPLC to give 30 mg, which was further purified using chiral preparative HPLC to afford the title compound (9 mg). HPLC:  
5 98% at 4.39 min (retention time) (Conditions: Zorbax SB C18 (4.6 x 75 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B, 8 min gradient (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>); Flow rate at 2.5 mL/min UV detection at 220 nm). Chiral HPLC: retention time = 10.59 min (99%); Conditions: OD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 20% isopropanol in  
10 hexane for 30 min at 1 mL/min; MS (ES) *m/z* 292 [M+1]<sup>+</sup>.

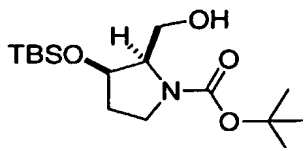
Alternatively, the Compound of Example 51 can be prepared by the following sequence:

15 **51A. (2*S*,3*R*)-3-(*tert*-Butyldimethylsilanyloxy)pyrrolidine-1,2-dicarboxylic acid 1-*tert*-butyl ester 2-methyl ester**



To a solution of (2*S*,3*R*)-*N*-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl-3-hydroxy-2  
20 pyrrolidinecarboxylic acid methyl ester (**1D**) (0.63 g, 2.56 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (12 mL) at rt was added imidazole (0.35 g, 5.14 mmol), and then *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl chloride (0.43 g, 2.83 mmol). After stirring for 3 h, the reaction mixture was partitioned between H<sub>2</sub>O and CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> layer was washed with 1 M H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>, NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), then filtered  
25 and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed (silica gel) eluting with 30% EtOAc/hexane to yield the title compound (0.91 g). LC/MS *m/z* 360 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

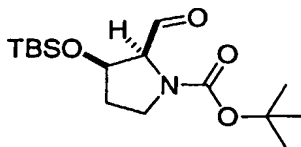
**51B. (2R,3R)-3-(*tert*-Butyldimethylsilanyloxy)-2-hydroxymethylpyrrolidine-1-carboxylic acid *tert*-butyl ester**



5        To (2*S*,3*R*)-3-(*tert*-Butyl-dimethyl-silanyloxy)-pyrrolidine-1,2-dicarboxylic acid 1-*tert*-butyl ester 2-methyl ester (**51A**) (8.05 g, 22.39 mmol) in THF (90 mL) at  $-78^{\circ}\text{C}$  was added a 1 M solution of Super-Hydride<sup>®</sup> in THF (112 mL, 112 mmol) in five portions over 15 min. The cold bath was removed and the reaction was allowed to warm to rt. After 3 h, the reaction  
10        was poured into a 1-L Erlenmeyer flask and was carefully quenched with ice while stirring and then diluted with EtOAc. The layers were separated and the organic layer washed with 1 M  $\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$ ,  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  and brine, dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$ ), filtered and concentrated. The residue was diluted with  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ , stirred with silica gel overnight, then concentrated and purified *via* flash chromatography  
15        eluting with 30% EtOAc/hexane to obtain the title compound (6.70 g) as a clear oil.

**51C. (2*S*,3*R*)-3-(*tert*-Butyldimethylsilanyloxy)-2-formylpyrrolidine-1-carboxylic acid *tert*-butyl ester**

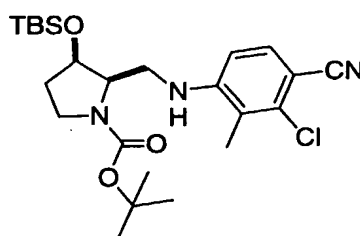
20



To (2*R*,3*R*)-3-(*tert*-Butyl-dimethyl-silanyloxy)-2-hydroxymethylpyrrolidine-1-carboxylic acid *tert*-butyl ester (**51B**) (6.70 g, 20.24 mmol) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (100 mL) at  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$  was added Dess-Martin periodinane. The ice bath  
25        was removed and the reaction was warmed to rt. After 2 h, saturated aqueous

Na<sub>2</sub>S<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> and NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (ca. 100 mL each) were added and the reaction mixture was stirred vigorously for 0.5 h. The layers were separated, the organic layer was washed with a mixture of saturated aqueous Na<sub>2</sub>S<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub> and NaHCO<sub>3</sub> followed by brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), and was then filtered and concentrated to  
5 obtain the title compound (7.20 g) as a yellow oil.

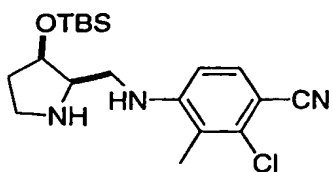
**51D. (2R,3R)-N-tert-Butyloxycarbonyl-3-(tert-butyldimethylsiloxy)-2-[(3-chloro-4-cyano-2-methylphenylamino)methyl]pyrrolidine**



10

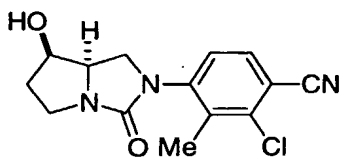
To a solution of (2S,3R)-3-(tert-Butyldimethylsilanyloxy)-2-formylpyrrolidine-1-carboxylic acid *tert*-butyl ester (**51C**) (661 mg, 2.0 mmol) in 5% DMF in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (10 mL) at rt was added 4-amino-2-chloro-3-methylbenzonitrile (340 mg, 2.04 mmol) followed by NaBH(OAc)<sub>3</sub> (636 mg, 3.0 mmol) and HOAc (180 μL, 3 mmol). The reaction was stirred under nitrogen at rt for 18 h. Additional portions of NaBH(OAc)<sub>3</sub> (424 mg, 2.0 mmol) and HOAc (120 μL, 2 mmol) were added, and the reaction was stirred for an additional 18 h. The reaction was diluted with EtOAc (50 mL) and the organic  
15 layer was washed with saturated aqueous NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (50 ml), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated. Purification *via* flash chromatography (silica gel, 0 to 15% EtOAc/hexanes) provided the title compound (605 mg, 1.26 mmol, 63%). MS *m/z* 480 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.  
20

**51E. (2R,3R)-3-(tert-Butyldimethylsilanyloxy)-2-[(3-chloro-4-cyano-2-methylphenylamino)methyl]pyrrolidine-1-carboxylic acid *tert*-butyl ester**



(2*R*,3*R*)-*N*-*tert*-Butyloxycarbonyl-3-(*tert*-butyldimethylsiloxy)-2-[(3-chloro-4-cyano-2-methylphenylamino)methyl]pyrrolidine (**51D**) (35 mg, 0.07 mmol) was dissolved in 50% TFA/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and stirred for 2 h then concentrated. The residue was dissolved in EtOAc, saturated aqueous NaHCO<sub>3</sub> was added and the reaction mixture was stirred vigorously for 0.5 h. The layers were separated, and the organic layer was washed with NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated to provide the title compound (22 mg) as a yellow film. LC/MS *m/z* 380 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

**51F. (7*R*,7*aR*)-2-Chloro-4-(7-hydroxy-3-oxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-*c*]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methylbenzonitrile**



15

To a solution of (2*R*,3*R*)-3-(*tert*-Butyldimethylsilyloxy)-2-[(3-chloro-4-cyano-2-methylphenylamino)methyl]pyrrolidine-1-carboxylic acid *tert*-butyl ester (**51E**) (22 mg, 0.06 mmol) dissolved in THF (1 mL) was added 1,1'-carbonyldiimidazole (9.40 mg, 0.06 mmol) and the mixture was stirred at rt for 3 days, and then brought to reflux for 1 h. An aliquot (~half of the reaction mixture) was treated with DBU (10 μL, 0.07 mmol) and the reaction mixture was heated at reflux overnight. The reaction was then diluted with EtOAc and water, and the layers were separated. The organic layer was washed with brine, concentrated under reduced pressure, and purified *via* preparative HPLC (Luna

25

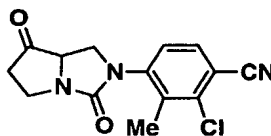
C-18, 21.2 x 100 mm, eluting with 60-100% solvent B (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% TFA and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% TFA) over 12 min; Flow rate at 20 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm). The major peak was collected, concentrated and treated with TFA (2 mL) overnight. The reaction was concentrated and purified *via* preparative HPLC (Luna C-18, 21.2 x 100 mm, eluting with 40-100% solvent B (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% TFA and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% TFA) over 10 min; Flow rate at 20 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm) to provide the title compound (1 mg). LC/MS *m/z* 292 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

10

### Example 52

#### 2-Chloro-4-[3,7-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methylbenzonitrile

15



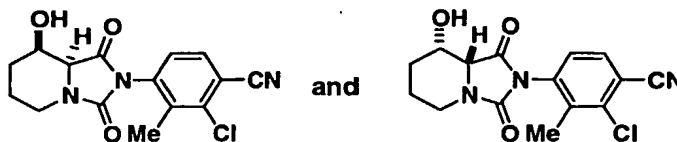
To a solution of compound **51** (0.02 g, 0.07 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (0.5 mL) was added a solution of Dess-Martin periodinane (0.038 g, 0.086 mmol) at rt. The reaction mixture was stirred at rt for 2 h. The reaction mixture was washed with NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (2 x 2 mL), brine, and dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> layer was then evaporated and the crude product was purified by preparative HPLC to yield 0.01g of the title compound as a white powder. HPLC: 99% at 1.92 min; Conditions: Phenom. Luna C18 (4.6 x 50 mm); eluted with 0% to 100% B; 4 min gradient (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% ACN - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% ACN - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>; flow rate at 4 mL/min., UV detection at 220 nm. Chiral HPLC: 98% at 34.2 min; Conditions: (CHIRALPAK<sup>®</sup> OD column 4.6 x

25

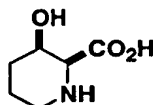
250 mm; 25% isopropanol in hexane over 40 min at flow rate 1.0 mL/min, UV detection at 220 nm); MS (ES)  $m/z$  299  $[M+1]^+$ .

### Examples 53a and 53b

5 **2-Chloro-4-(8-hydroxy-1,3-dioxohexahydroimidazo[1,5-a]pyridin-2-yl)-3-methylbenzonitrile**

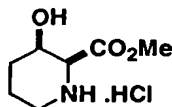


**53A. (±)-cis-3-hydroxypyridine-2-carboxylic acid**



10 A sample of  $\text{Rh}(\text{OH})_3$  was prepared according to the procedure described in *Tetrahedron Lett.* **1967**, 17, 1663-1664. The 3-hydroxypyridine-2-carboxylic acid (0.5 g, 3.6 mmol) was dissolved in aqueous  $\text{NH}_4\text{OH}$  and then added  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  in a ratio of 1 to 7.  $\text{Rh}(\text{OH})_3$  (0.2 g) was added and the reaction mixture was stirred at rt under 70-80 psi of  $\text{H}_2$  for 4 h. The catalyst was filtered through a  
15 cake of celite and the filtrate was evaporated under reduced pressure to afford compound **53A** (0.50 g) as a white foam.

**53B. (±)-cis-3-Hydroxypiperidine-2-carboxylic acid methyl ester**



20 Hydrogen chloride gas was bubbled through a suspension of 3-hydroxypiperidine-2-carboxylic acid (0.54 g, 0.370 mol) in MeOH (100 mL) cooled to 0 °C for 10 min. The resulting clear solution was stirred at rt for 4 h, then evaporated carefully under reduced pressure (white precipitates formed during

the concentration). The resulting white solid was dried overnight under vacuum to afford 0.86 g of the title compound as an off-white powder.

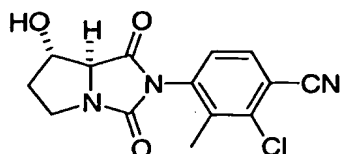
**53C. 2-Chloro-4-(8-hydroxy-1,3-dioxohexahydroimidazo[1,5-a]pyridin-2-yl)-3-methylbenzonitrile**

To a suspension of compound **53B** (0.20 g, 0.77 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (3 mL) cooled to 0 °C was added *i*-Pr<sub>2</sub>EtN (0.178 mL, 1.00 mmol). After stirring at 0 °C for 20 min, compound **23E** (0.095 g, 0.59 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (1 mL) solution was added, along with 4 Å molecular sieves (0.5 g), and the resulting mixture stirred at rt until urea formation was completed (~ 2 h). The mixture was then stirred at rt until hydantoin formation was complete (~15 h). The reaction mixture was loaded on a silica gel column, eluted with 40 % EtOAc/hexane, and 5% MeOH in EtOAc/hexane (1:1) to afford 0.11 g of the title compound as an off-white powder. HPLC: 99% at 1.67-1.79 min; Conditions: Phenom. Luna C18 (4.6 x 50 mm); Eluted with 0% to 100% B; 4 min gradient (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% ACN - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% ACN - 0.1% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>), Flow rate at 4 mL/min., UV detection at 220 nm). The compound was further loaded on a Chiral AD column, eluted with 25% isopropanol in hexane isocratic to afford 50 mg each of enantiomer **53a** (isomer A; retention time = 14.2 min; 100% e.e.) and enantiomer **53b** (isomer B; retention time = 20 min; 100% e.e) of the title compound as white powders. Chiral HPLC Conditions: (CHIRALPAK® AD column 4.6 x 250 mm; 25% isopropanol in hexane over 30 min at flow rate 1.0 mL/min, UV detection at 220 nm); MS (ES) *m/z* 320 [M+1]<sup>+</sup>.

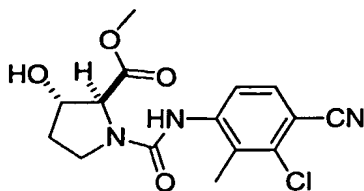
**Example 54**

**(7S,7aS)-2-Chloro-4-(7-hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methylbenzonitrile**



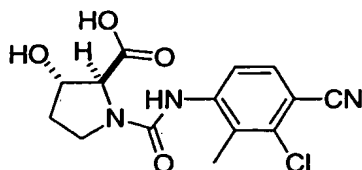


**54A. (2S,3S)-1-(3-Chloro-4-cyano-2-methylphenylcarbamoyl)-3-hydroxy-pyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid methyl ester.**



5

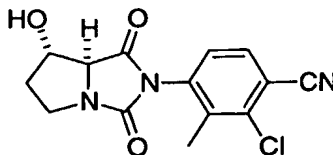
To a suspension of *trans*-3-hydroxyproline methyl ester, HCl salt (207 mg, 1.14 mmol) in 1.5 mL of CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> cooled to 0 °C was added diisopropylethylamine (0.23 mL, 1.30 mmol) followed by a suspension of isocyanate **23E** (200 mg, 1.04 mmol) in 2 mL of CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The suspension was allowed to warm to rt and stir for 1 h. The reaction mixture was then washed with water, and a solid precipitated which was filtered and dried under vacuum to afford the title compound (210 mg) as a white solid. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>OD) 1.98-2.01 (m, 1H), 2.13-2.17 (m, 1H), 2.30 (s, 3H), 3.69-3.72 (m, 5H), 4.36 (br s, 1H), 4.40 (br s, 1H), 7.41 (d, *J* = 8.80, 1H), 7.55 (d, *J* = 8.25, 1H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>OD) 15.88, 33.72, 45.64, 52.94, 69.50, 74.55, 110.62, 117.41, 125.65, 132.36, 134.44, 137.83, 144.33, 156.43, 172.88; HPLC a) column: Phenominex C18 4.6 x 50 mm, 4 min gradient, 10% MeOH/90% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA to 90% MeOH/10% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA; 1 min hold, 4 mL/min UV detection at 220 nm, 2.30 min retention time; HPLC b) column: Shimadzu Shim-Pack VP-ODS C18 4.6 x 50 mm, 4 min gradient, 10% MeOH/90% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA to 90% MeOH/10% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA, 1 min hold; 4 mL/min, UV detection at 220 nm, 2.13 min retention time (97%); HPLC c) column: Daicel Chiralcel OD 4.6 x 250 mm, Isocratic 25% Isopropanol/Hexanes, 30 min, 1 mL/min, UV detection at 220 nm, 9.03 min retention time (98%); MS (ES) *m/z* 338 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

**54B. (2S,3S)-1-(3-Chloro-4-cyano-2-methylphenylcarbamoyl)-3-hydroxy-pyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid**

5

A suspension of ester **54A** (260 mg, 0.770 mmol) in 20 mL of 1.6 N NaOH was stirred at rt for 45 min. The reaction mixture was acidified to pH 2 with 10% HCl and extracted with EtOAc (3x). The combined organic layers were dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and the filtrate concentrated under reduced pressure to afford the title compound (260 mg) as a beige solid. A portion (50 mg) of the residue was purified by preparative HPLC (reverse phase silica gel, 10% MeOH/90% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA to 90% MeOH/10% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA) to afford the title compound (25 mg) as a colorless oil. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>OD) 2.02-2.05 (m, 1H), 2.17-2.22 (m, 1H), 2.35 (s, 3H), 3.73-3.76 (m, 2H), 4.40 (br s, 1H), 4.49 (br s, 1H), 7.47 (d, *J* = 8.80, 1H), 7.58 (d, *J* = 8.25, 1H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>OD) 15.83, 33.59, 45.61, 69.53, 74.73, 110.40, 117.45, 125.45, 132.34, 137.80, 144.42, 156.50, 159.95, 173.94; HPLC a) column: Phenomenex ODS C18 4.6 x 50 mm, 4 min gradient, 10% MeOH/90% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA to 90% MeOH/10% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA; 1 min hold, 4 mL/min UV detection at 220 nm, 1.97 min retention time; HPLC b) column: Shimadzu Shim-Pack VP-ODS C18 4.6 x 50 mm, 4 min gradient, 10% MeOH/90% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA to 90% MeOH/10% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA, 1 min hold; 4 mL/min, UV detection at 220 nm, 1.79 min retention time (92%); HPLC c) column: Daicel Chiralcel OD 4.6 x 250 mm, Isocratic 25% isopropanol/hexanes, 30 min, 1 mL/min, UV detection at 220 nm, 6.96 min retention time (98%); MS (ES) *m/z* 324 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

**54C. (7S,7aS)-2-Chloro-4-(7-hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methylbenzonitrile.**

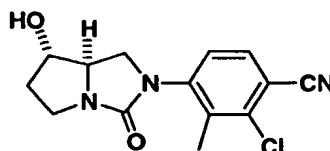


5

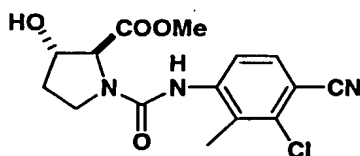
To a suspension of acid **54B** (210 mg, 0.649 mmol) in 15 mL of acetonitrile at rt was added DCC (134 mg, 0.649 mmol) followed by *p*-nitrophenol (180 mg, 1.30 mmol). The suspension was refluxed for 1 h, cooled to rt and filtered. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure and the residue dissolved in EtOAc, washed with water and brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, EtOAc/hexanes, 75:25) to afford the title compound (121 mg) as a white foam. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>OD) 1.94-2.05 (m, 1H), 2.18, 2.22 (s, 3H), 2.24-2.33 (m, 1H), 3.34-3.40 (m, 1H), 3.67-3.75 (m, 1H), 4.08, 4.16 (d, *J* = 6.05, 1H), 4.35, 4.42 (m, 1H), 7.33, 7.38 (d, *J* = 8.25, 1H), 7.70 (m, 1H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>OD) 15.90, 16.11, 36.95, 37.05, 44.88, 45.06, 70.91, 70.94, 72.46, 72.90, 115.19, 115.53, 116.60, 116.66, 129.30, 129.46, 132.74, 133.03, 137.41, 137.61, 138.08, 138.37, 138.42, 138.53, 159.69, 159.97, 172.10, 172.43; HPLC a) column: Phenomenex LUNA C18 4.6 x 50 mm, 4 min gradient, 10% MeOH/90% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA to 90% MeOH/10% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA; 1 min hold, 4 mL/min UV detection at 220 nm, 2.32 min retention time; HPLC b) column: Shimadzu Shim-Pack VP-ODS C18 4.6 x 50 mm, 4 min gradient, 10% MeOH/90% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA to 90% MeOH/10% H<sub>2</sub>O/0.1% TFA, 1 min hold; 4 mL/min, UV detection at 220 nm, 2.15 min retention time (100%); HPLC c) column: Daicel Chiralcel OD 4.6 x 250 mm, Isocratic 25% Isopropanol/Hexanes, 30 min, 1 mL/min, UV detection at 220 nm, 17.65 min retention time (99%); MS (ES) *m/z* 306 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 55****2-Chloro-4-[(7*S*,7*aR*)-7-hydroxy-3-oxo-tetrahydro-1*H*-pyrrolo  
[1,2-*c*]imidazol-2(3*H*)-yl]-3-methylbenzonitrile**

5

**55A. Methyl-(2*S*,3*S*)-1-[[[(3-Chloro-4-cyano-2-methylphenyl)amino]-  
carbonyl]-3-hydroxypyrrolidine-2-carboxylate**

10

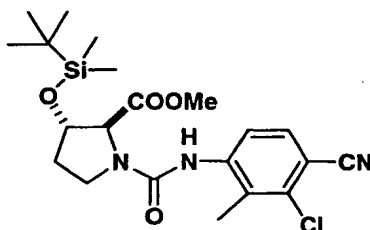


A solution of ester **1A** (500 mg, 2.75 mmol) in dry CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (10 mL) was cooled to 0 °C, treated with Hunig's base (0.53 mL, 3.04 mmol) and stirred at 0 °C for 30 min. The solution was treated with isocyanate **23E** (505 mg, 2.62 mmol), and the resulting suspension was stirred at rt for 3 h. The insoluble solids were filtered off and the filtrate was partitioned between aqueous NH<sub>4</sub>Cl (6.0 mL) and CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (3 x 60 mL). The combined organic phases were washed with brine, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure.

The residue and insoluble solids were combined and chromatographed (silica gel; EtOAc/hexane gradient) to yield the title compound (177.2 mg, 75.3%) as a white solid, mp 189-191 °C. HPLC: 1.72 min (retention time) (Conditions: YMC S-5 C-18 (4.6 x 50 mm), eluting with 0-100% B, 4 min gradient. (A= 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% CH<sub>3</sub>CN - 0.1 % TFA and B= 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% CH<sub>3</sub>CN - 0.1% TFA); Flow rate at 4 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm). Chiral HPLC: retention time = 22.2 min (100%); Conditions: AD (4.6 x 250mm); Eluted with

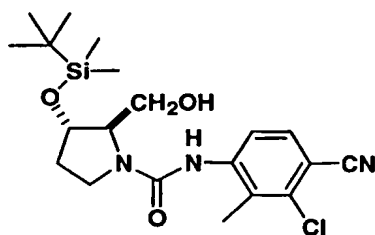
20% isopropanol in heptane for 30 min at 1 mL/min. MS (ES)  $m/z$  338 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

**55B. Methyl-(2*S*,3*S*)-1-[[3-chloro-4-cyano-2-methylphenyl]amino]-  
5 carbonyl}-3-(*tert*-butyl-dimethylsilanyloxy)-pyrrolidine-2-carboxylate**



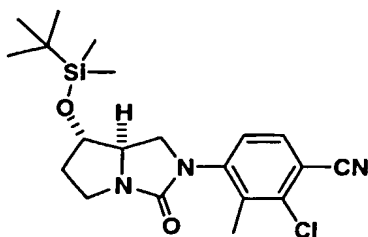
A cooled (0 °C) solution of compound **55A** (510.1 mg, 1.51 mmol) and  
10 imidazole (516 mg, 7.58 mmol) in dry DMF (2.6 mL) was treated with 97%  
*tert*-butyldimethylsilyl chloride (572 mg, 3.68 mmol), stirred at 0 °C for 5 min  
then at rt for 24 h. Methanol (3.5 mL) was added and the solution stirred at rt  
for another 24 h. The mixture was partitioned between 10 % citric acid ( 5.3  
mL) and EtOAc (3 x 50 mL). The combined organic phases were washed with  
15 brine, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The  
resulting syrup was chromatographed (silica gel; EtOAc/hexane gradient) to  
yield the title compound (732.3 mg, 100%) as a white solid, mp 123-125 °C.  
HPLC: 3.38 min (retention time) (Conditions: YMC S-5 C-18 (4.6 x 50 mm),  
eluting with 0-100% B, 4 min gradient. (A= 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% CH<sub>3</sub>CN - 0.1%  
20 TFA and B= 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% CH<sub>3</sub>CN - 0.1% TFA); Flow rate at 4 mL/min.  
UV detection at 220 nm. Chiral HPLC: retention time = 9.30 min (98.6%);  
Conditions: AD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 20% isopropanol in heptane for  
30 min at 1 mL/min. MS (ES)  $m/z$  452 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

**55C. (2*R*,3*S*)-*N*-(3-Chloro-4-cyano-2-methylphenyl)3-(*tert*-  
25 butyldimethylsilanyloxy)-2-(hydroxymethyl)pyrrolidine-1-carboxamide**



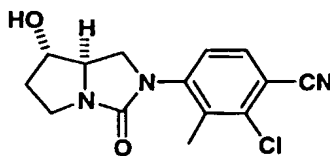
To a solution of compound **55B** (300 mg, 0.66 mmol) in anhydrous THF  
 5 (6.7 mL) at  $-25\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$  was added 1 N LAH in THF (1.34 mL, 1.34 mmol) over a  
 period of 10 min. The solution was then warmed to  $0\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$  and stirred for 2.0 h  
 before quenching with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (0.05 mL), 15 % NaOH (0.05 mL) and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (0.16  
 mL). After warming to rt, the mixture was extracted with EtOAc (2 x 40 mL).  
 The combined organic phases were washed with brine, dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ), filtered  
 10 and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resultant off-white solid was  
 chromatographed (silica gel; EtOAc/hexane gradient) to yield the title  
 compound (217.2 mg, 78%) as a white solid, mp  $174\text{--}176\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ . HPLC: 3.23 min  
 (retention time) (Conditions: YMC S-5 C-18 (4.6 x 50 mm), eluting with 0-  
 100% B, 4 min gradient. (A= 90%  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  -10%  $\text{CH}_3\text{CN}$  - 0.1% TFA and B= 10%  
 15  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  - 90%  $\text{CH}_3\text{CN}$  -0.1% TFA); Flow rate at 4 mL/min. UV detection at 220  
 nm. Chiral HPLC: retention time = 7.11 min (96.1%); Conditions: AD (4.6 x  
 250 mm); Eluted with 20% isopropanol in heptane for 30 min at 1 mL/min.  
 MS (ES)  $m/z$  424  $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ .

20 **55D. 2-Chloro-4-[(7*S*,7*aR*)-7-(*tert*-butyldimethylsilyloxy)-3-oxo-  
 tetrahydro-1*H*-pyrrolo[1,2*c*]imidazol-2-(3*H*)yl]methylbenzonitrile**



A solution of compound **55C** (150 mg, 0.35 mmol) in anhydrous THF (4.8 mL) at 0 °C was treated with 97% *tert*-BuOK (104.2 mg, 0.86 mmol) and stirred at 0 °C for 5 min. To the solution was added a solution of toluenesulfonyl chloride (81.6 mg, 0.43 mmol) in anhydrous THF, and the mixture was stirred at 0 °C for another 10 min as described in by Taek Heon Kim and Gue-Jae Lee *J. Org. Chem.* **64**, 2941-2943 (1999). The reaction mixture was then quenched with H<sub>2</sub>O (4.8 mL), removed from the bath and extracted with EtOAc (2 x 15 mL). The combined organic phases were dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed (silica gel; EtOAc/hexane gradient) to yield the title compound (128.9 mg, 90%) as a white foam. HPLC: 3.61 min (retention time) (Conditions: YMC S-5 C-18 (4.6 x 50 mm), eluting with 0-100 % B, 4 min gradient. (A= 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% CH<sub>3</sub>CN - 0.1 % TFA and B= 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% CH<sub>3</sub>CN - 0.1% TFA); Flow rate at 4 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm. Chiral HPLC: retention time = 9.54 min (99.3%); Conditions: AD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 20% isopropanol in heptane for 30 min at 1 mL/min. MS (ES) *m/z* 406 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

**55E. 2-Chloro-4-[(7*S*,7*aR*)-7-hydroxy-3-oxotetrahydro-1*H*-pyrrolo[1,2-*c*]imidazol-2(3*H*)-yl]-3-methylbenzonitrile.**



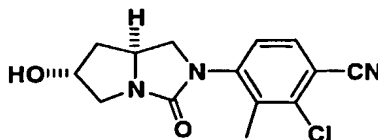
To a solution of compound **55D** (112.4 mg, 0.28 mmol) in anhydrous THF (5.0 mL) at 0 °C was added 1.0 M TBAF in THF (0.32 mL, 0.32 mmol). The solution was stirred at 0 °C for 10 min, at rt for 19 h, then partitioned between 25% NH<sub>4</sub>Cl (7.0 mL) and EtOAc (3 x 40 mL). The combined organic

phases were washed with brine, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resultant off-white solid was chromatographed (silica gel; EtOAc/hexane gradient) to yield the title compound (77.4 mg, 95%) as a white solid, mp 148-149 °C. HPLC: 5.4 min (retention time) (Conditions: 5 Zorbax C-18 (4.6 x 75 mm), eluting with 0-100% B, 8 min gradient. (A= 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% CH<sub>3</sub>OH- 0.2% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> and B= 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% CH<sub>3</sub>OH - 0.2% H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>); Flow rate at 2.5 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm. Chiral HPLC: retention time = 19.9 min (99.7%); Conditions: AD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 20% isopropanol in heptane for 30 min at 1 mL/min. MS (ES) *m/z* 290  
10 [M-H]<sup>-</sup>.

### Example 56

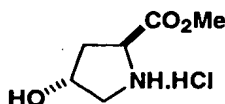
#### 2-Chloro-4-[(6*R*,7*aS*)-6-hydroxy-3-oxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-*c*]imidazol-2(3*H*)-yl]-3-methylbenzonitrile.

15



#### 56A. 4-Hydroxypyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid methyl ester, hydrochloride salt

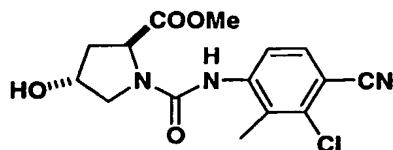
20



The title compound was prepared from *trans*-4-hydroxy-L-proline (5.0 g, 38.1 mmol) by procedures analogous to those described for Example 1A  
25 to afford a white solid (6.97 g, 100%), mp 164-166 °C.



**56B. Methyl (2*S*,4*R*)-1-[[[(3-Chloro-4-cyano-2-methylphenyl)amino]-carbonyl]-4-hydroxypyrrolidine-2-carboxylate**

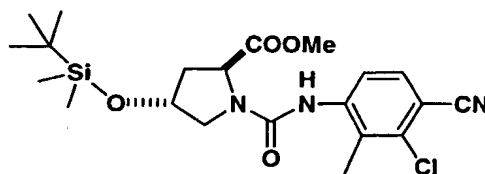


5

The title compound was prepared from compound **56A** (300 mg, 1.65 mmol) and isocyanate **23E** (312 mg, 1.62 mmol) by procedures analogous to that described for Example **55A** to afford a white foam (375.6 mg, 69%). HPLC: 1.68 min (retention time) (Conditions: YMC S-5 C-18 (4.6 x 250 mm),  
 10 eluting with 0-100% B, 4 min gradient. (A= 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% CH<sub>3</sub>CN - 0.1 % TFA and B= 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% CH<sub>3</sub>CN - 0.1% TFA); Flow rate at 4 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm. Chiral HPLC: retention time = 12.92 min (98.9%); Conditions: AD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 20% isopropanol in heptane for 30 min at 1 mL/min. MS (ES) *m/z* 338 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

15

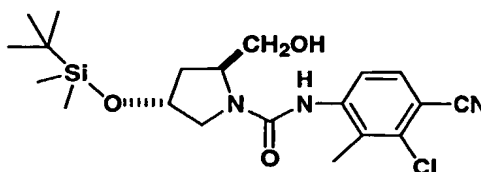
**56C. Methyl (2*S*,4*R*)-1-[[[(3-chloro-4-cyano-2-methylphenyl)amino]-carbonyl]-4-(*tert*-butyldimethylsilyloxy)pyrrolidine-2-carboxylate.**



20 The title compound was prepared from compound **56B** (150 mg, 0.44 mmol) in a manner analogous to that described for compound **55B** to afford a white solid (156.3 mg, 79%), mp 129-131 °C. HPLC: 3.38 min (retention time) (Conditions: YMC S-5 C-18 (4.6 x 250 mm), eluting with 0-100% B, 4 min gradient. (A= 90% H<sub>2</sub>O -10% CH<sub>3</sub>CN - 0.1 % TFA and B= 10% H<sub>2</sub>O -  
 25 90% CH<sub>3</sub>CN - 0.1% TFA); Flow rate at 4 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm.

Chiral HPLC: retention time = 9.80 min (99.9%); Conditions: AD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 20% isopropanol in heptane for 30 min at 1 mL/min. MS (ES)  $m/z$  452  $[M+H]^+$ .

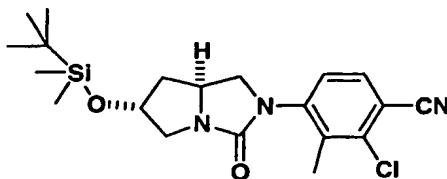
5 **56D. (2S,4R)-N-(3-Chloro-4-cyano-2-methylphenyl)-4-(tert-butyldimethylsilyloxy)-2-(hydroxymethyl)pyrrolidine-1-carboxamide**



10 To a solution of compound **56C** (145 mg, 0.32 mmol) in anhydrous THF (3.0 mL) at 0 °C was added dropwise a solution of 2 M LiBH<sub>4</sub> in THF (0.24 ml, 0.48 mmol) as described by Terry Rosen *et. al. J. Med. Chem.* **31** (8), 1598-1611 (1988). The solution was stirred at 0 °C for 2.5 h, quenched with 1.0 M K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (1.0 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (2 x 25 mL). The combined organic  
15 phases were washed with 1 M K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>, brine, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed (silica gel; EtOAc/hexane gradient) to yield the title compound (125.4 mg, 93%) as a white solid, mp 169-171 °C. HPLC: 3.31 min (retention time) (Conditions: YMC S-5 C-18 (4.6 x 250 mm), eluting with 0-100% B, 4 min  
20 gradient. (A= 90% H<sub>2</sub>O -10% CH<sub>3</sub>CN - 0.1% TFA and B= 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% CH<sub>3</sub>CN - 0.1%TFA); Flow rate at 4 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm. Chiral HPLC: retention time = 7.01 min (99.96%); Conditions: AD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 20 % isopropanol in heptane for 30 min at 1 mL/min. MS (ES)  $m/z$  424  $[M+H]^+$ .

25

**56E. 2-Chloro-4-[(6*R*,7*aS*)-6-(*tert*-butyldimethylsilanyloxy)-3-oxotetrahydro-1*H*-pyrrolo[1,2-*c*]imidazol-2(3*H*)-yl]-3-methylbenzonitrile**

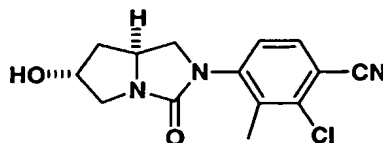


5

The title compound was prepared from compound **56D** (124 mg, 0.29 mmol) in a manner analogous to that described for compound **1E** to give a colorless syrup (104.9 mg, 89%). HPLC: 3.58 min (retention time) (Conditions: YMC S-5 C-18 (4.6 x 250 mm), eluting with 0-100% B, 4 min gradient. (A= 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% CH<sub>3</sub>CN - 0.1% TFA and B= 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% CH<sub>3</sub>CN - 0.1%TFA); Flow rate at 4 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm. Chiral HPLC: retention time = 12.53 min (99.96%); Conditions: AD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 20% isopropanol in heptane for 30 min at 1 mL/min. MS (ES) *m/z* 406 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

15

**56F. 2-Chloro-4-[(6*R*,7*aS*)-6-hydroxy-3-oxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-*c*]imidazol-2(3*H*)-yl]-3-methylbenzonitrile**



20

The title compound was prepared from compound **56E** (95.9 mg, 0.24 mmol) in a manner analogous to that described for compound **1E** to give a white foam (69.8 mg, 100%). HPLC: 1.66 min (retention time) (Conditions: YMC S-5 C-18 (4.6 x 250 mm), eluting with 0-100% B, 4 min gradient. (A= 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% CH<sub>3</sub>CN - 0.1% TFA and B= 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% CH<sub>3</sub>CN - 0.1% TFA); Flow rate at 4 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm. Chiral HPLC:

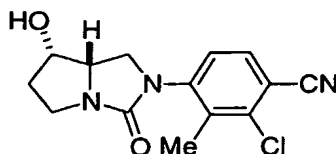
retention time = 15.42 min (100%); Conditions: AD (4.6 x 250 mm); Eluted with 20% isopropanol in heptane for 30 min at 1 mL/min. MS (ES)  $m/z$  290 [M-H]<sup>-</sup>.

5

### Example 57

#### (7*S*,7*aS*)-2-Chloro-4-(7-hydroxy-3-oxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-*c*]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methylbenzonitrile

10



To a suspension of (7*S*,7*aR*)-2-Chloro-4-(7-hydroxy-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-*c*]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methylbenzonitrile (**23C**) (5.00g, 16.36 mmol) in THF (164 mL) was added LAH (620 mg, 16.34 mmol) in two portions. After 30 min, the reaction was quenched by the slow addition of the following: water (0.62 mL) in THF (2 mL), 1.86 mL 15% aqueous NaOH, then 1.86 mL water in THF (2 mL). After stirring for 15 min, the reaction was filtered through celite, washed with EtOAc, and concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain 4.45 g of a yellow foam. The foam was taken up in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (142 mL) and cooled to -78 °C. Triethylsilane (4.50 mL, 28.17 mmol) and boron trifluoride diethyl etherate (3.60 mL, 28.41 mmol) were then added and the cold bath was removed. After stirring for 1.5 h, the reaction mixture was poured into saturated aqueous NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and the layers were separated. The organic layer was dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered, concentrated under reduced pressure, and then purified using preparative HPLC (YMC ODS C-18, 30 x 250 mm, eluting with 50-70% solvent B (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% TFA and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% TFA) over 30 min; Flow

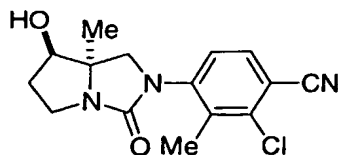
rate at 20 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm) to provide a white solid (ca. 1 g). The solid was further purified by several recrystallizations (first from MeOH/H<sub>2</sub>O then EtOH until purity >99% by <sup>1</sup>H NMR) to provide 236 mg of the desired racemic product as white needles. A portion of this material (28  
 5 mg) was further purified using chiral preparative HPLC (Chiracel OD, 5 x 50 cm, eluting with 20% isopropanol/hexane, Flow rate = 56 mL/min, UV detection at 220 nm) to afford **57** (6.8 mg) (Chiral HPLC: retention time = 10.68 min; Daicel Chiralcel OD, 4.6 x 250 mm, eluting with 20% isopropanol in hexane over 30 min; Flow rate at 1 mL/min, UV detection at 220 nm;  
 10 LC/MS *m/z* 292 [M+1]<sup>+</sup>) and 11.5 mg of a white solid which was purified by chiral preparative HPLC as above followed by preparative HPLC to provide the title compound (3.3 mg) (Chiral HPLC: retention time = 12.91 min; Daicel Chiralcel OD, 4.6 x 250 mm, eluting with 20% isopropanol/hexane over 30 min; Flow rate at 1 mL/min, UV detection at 220 nm). LC/MS *m/z* 292 [M+1]<sup>+</sup>.

15

### Example 58

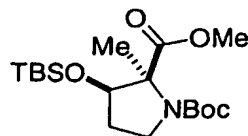
#### (7*R*,7*aR*)-Chloro-4-(7-hydroxy-7*a*-methyl-3-oxotetrahydropyrrolo-[1,2*c*]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methylbenzonitrile

20



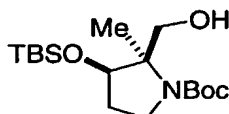
**58A. (2*S*,3*R*)-3-(*tert*-Butyldimethylsilanyloxy)-2-methylpyrrolidine-1,2-dicarboxylic acid 1-*tert*-butyl ester-2-methyl ester**

25



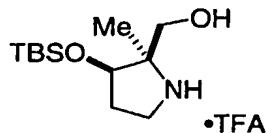
To a solution of (2*S*,3*R*)-3-Hydroxy-2-methylpyrrolidine-1,2-dicarboxylic acid 1-*tert*-butyl ester-2-methyl ester (**25A**) (362 mg, 1.39 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (4 mL) was added imidazole (284 mg, 4.17 mmol) then *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl chloride (1.05 g, 6.95 mmol). After stirring overnight, the reaction was partitioned between H<sub>2</sub>O and CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> layer was washed with 1M H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> (2x) and brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), then filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed (silica gel) eluting with 30% EtOAc/hexane to yield the title compound (456 mg) as a white solid.

**58B. (2*R*,3*R*)-3-(*tert*-Butyldimethylsilyloxy)-2-hydroxymethyl-2-methylpyrrolidine-1-carboxylic acid *tert*-butyl ester**



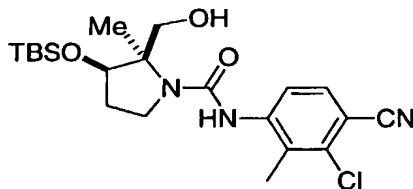
To a solution of (2*S*,3*R*)-3-(*tert*-Butyldimethylsilyloxy)-2-methylpyrrolidine-1,2-dicarboxylic acid 1-*tert*-butyl ester-2-methyl ester (**58A**) (1.08 g, 2.90 mmol) in THF (12 mL) at -78 °C was added a 1 M solution of Super-Hydride<sup>®</sup> in THF (14.50 mL, 14.50 mmol) in three portions over 15 min. After 10 min, the cold bath was removed and the reaction was allowed to warm to rt and was stirred for 18 h. The reaction was cooled again to -78 °C and more Super-Hydride<sup>®</sup> (7 mL) was added. After stirring an additional 24 h, the reaction was poured into a 1-L Erlenmeyer flask containing ice water and was then diluted with EtOAc. The layers were separated and the organic layer washed with 1 M H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> (2x), NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was diluted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>, stirred with silica gel for 10 min, then concentrated under reduced pressure and purified *via* flash chromatography, eluting with 20% EtOAc/hexane to obtain the title compound (0.54 g) as a clear oil. MS *m/z* 346 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

**58C. (2R,3R)-[3-(*tert*-Butyldimethylsilanyloxy)-2-methylpyrrolidin-2-yl]methanol trifluoroacetic acid salt**



5           (2R,3R)-3-(*tert*-Butyldimethyl-silanyloxy)-2-hydroxymethyl-2-methylpyrrolidine-1-carboxylic acid *tert*-butyl ester (**58B**) (269 mg, 0.78 mmol) was stirred in 17% TFA/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (6 mL) for 30 min. The reaction was concentrated to provide a brown oil (334 mg). LC/MS *m/z* 246 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>

10   **58D. (2R,3R)-3-(*tert*-Butyldimethylsilanyloxy)-2-hydroxymethyl-2-methylpyrrolidine-1-carboxylic acid (3-chloro-4-cyano-2-methyl-phenyl)-amide**

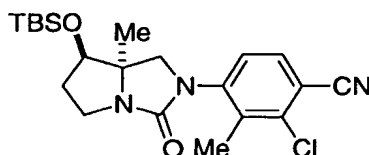


15           To a solution of (2R,3R)-[3-(*tert*-Butyldimethylsilanyloxy)-2-methylpyrrolidin-2-yl]methanol trifluoroacetic acid salt (**58C**) (167 mg, 0.61 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (2.5 mL) at 0 °C were added molecular sieves followed by Hunig's base (0.21 mL, 1.22 mL). After stirring for 15 min, 2-Chloro-4-isocyanato-3-methylbenzonitrile (**23A**) was added and the ice bath was  
20 removed. After 10 min, the reaction was stirred for 2 h and then diluted with water and CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The layers were separated and the organic layer was washed with brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated. The resulting solid was purified *via* preparative HPLC (Luna C-18, 250 x 21.2 mm, eluting with 60-100% solvent B (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% TFA and B =

10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH – 0.1% TFA) over 15 min; Flow rate at 10 mL/min; UV detection at 220 nm) to provide the title compound (17 mg) as a white film (LC/MS *m/z* 438 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>) and di-acylated product (80 mg) as a white solid (LC/MS *m/z* 630 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>). The di-acylated product (80 mg, 0.13 mmol) was dissolved in EtOH (2 mL) and treated with 21% NaOEt (48 µL, 0.13 mmol) at rt for 4 h. The reaction was concentrated under reduced pressure then diluted with water and EtOAc. The layers were separated, and the aqueous layer acidified with 1 N HCl then re-extracted with EtOAc. The combined organic layers were washed with brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified *via* preparative HPLC (Luna C-18, 100 x 21.2 mm, eluting with 40-100% solvent B (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH – 0.1% TFA and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH – 0.1% TFA) over 10 min; Flow rate at 20 mL/min; UV detection at 220 nm) to provide the title compound (43 mg) as a white film. LC/MS *m/z* 438 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

15

**58E. (7*R*,7*aR*)-4-[7-(*tert*-Butyldimethylsilanyloxy)-7*a*-methyl-3-oxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-*c*]imidazol-2-yl]-2-chloro-3-methyl-benzonitrile**



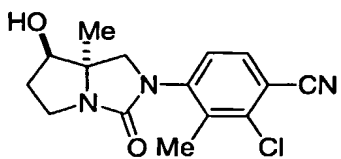
20 To a solution of (2*R*,3*R*)-3-(*tert*-Butyldimethylsilanyloxy)-2-hydroxymethyl-2-methylpyrrolidine-1-carboxylic acid (3-chloro-4-cyano-2-methyl-phenyl)-amide (**58D**) (43 mg, 0.10 mmol) in THF (1 mL) at 0 °C was added a 1 M solution of potassium *tert*-butoxide in THF (0.24 mL, 0.24 mmol) followed by a solution of *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride (22 mg, 0.12 mmol) in THF (0.5 mL). After 10 min, additional potassium *tert*-butoxide (50 µL) and *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride (3 mg) were added. After another 10 min, the reaction was diluted with water and EtOAc and the layers were separated. The



organic layer was washed with brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated and purified *via* preparative HPLC (Luna C-18, 100 x 21.2 mm, eluting with 60-100% solvent B (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% TFA and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% TFA) over 12 min; Flow rate at 20 mL/min; UV  
5 detection at 220 nm) to provide the title compound (17 mg). LC/MS *m/z* 420 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

**58F. (7*R*,7*aR*)-2-Chloro-4-(7-hydroxy-7*a*-methyl-3-oxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-*c*]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methylbenzonitrile**

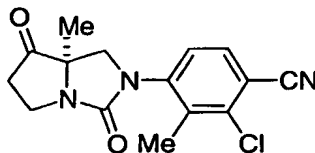
10



To a solution of (7*R*,7*aR*)-4-[7-(*tert*-Butyldimethylsilanyloxy)-7*a*-methyl-3-oxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-*c*]imidazol-2-yl]-2-chloro-3-methylbenzonitrile (**58E**) (17 mg, 0.04 mmol) in THF (2 mL) was added acetic  
15 acid (100 μL) and a 1 M solution of TBAF in THF (122 μL, 0.12 mmol). After stirring at rt for 11 h, additional TBAF solution was added (100 μL), and after stirring for another 6 h, 200 μL TBAF solution was added. The reaction was stirred overnight, then 100 μL TBAF was added and the reaction stirred an additional 1.5 h. The reaction was then quenched with saturated aqueous  
20 NH<sub>4</sub>Cl and extracted with EtOAc. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified *via* preparative HPLC (Luna C-18, 100 x 21.2 mm, eluting with 40-100% solvent B (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% MeOH - 0.1% TFA and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% MeOH - 0.1% TFA) over 10 min; Flow rate at  
25 20 mL/min; UV detection at 220 nm) to provide the title compound (11 mg). LC/MS *m/z* 306 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 59****(7aR)-2-Chloro-3-methyl-4-(7a-methyl-3,7-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)benzonitrile**

5

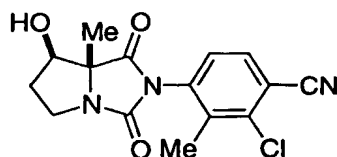


To a 2 M CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> solution of oxalyl chloride (68 μL, 0.13 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (2 mL) at -78 °C was added DMSO (17 μL, 0.25 mmol). After 20 min, a solution of (7R,7aR)-2-chloro-4-(7-hydroxy-7a-methyl-3-oxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methylbenzonitrile (**58F**) (17 mg, 0.06 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (1 mL) was added. After an additional 20 min at -78 °C, triethylamine (62 μL, 0.47 mmol) was added, the cold bath was removed, and the reaction mixture was stirred for 20 min. Water was added and the layers were separated. The organic layer was washed with brine then dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated. The resulting residue was purified via preparative HPLC (YMC ODS C-18, 100 x 20 mm, eluting with 30-80% solvent B (A = 90% H<sub>2</sub>O - 10% CH<sub>3</sub>CN - 0.1% TFA and B = 10% H<sub>2</sub>O - 90% CH<sub>3</sub>CN - 0.1% TFA) over 15 min; Flow rate at 20 mL/min; UV detection at 220 nm) to provide the title compound (6.3 mg) as a white solid. LC/MS *m/z* 629 [2M+23]<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 60**

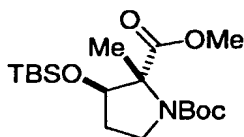
25

**(7R,7aR)-2-Chloro-4-(7-hydroxy-7a-methyl-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-c]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methylbenzonitrile**



60A. (2*R*,3*R*)-3-(*tert*-Butyldimethylsilanyloxy)-2-methylpyrrolidine-1,2-dicarboxylic acid 1-*tert*-butyl ester-2-methyl ester

5

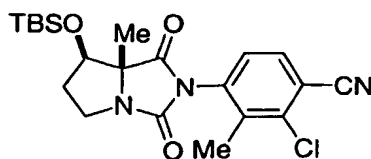


To a solution of (2*S*,3*R*)-3-(*tert*-Butyldimethylsilanyloxy)pyrrolidine-1,2-dicarboxylic acid 1-*tert*-butyl ester 2-methyl ester (**51A**) (195 mg, 0.54 mmol) in THF (6 mL) at  $-78^{\circ}\text{C}$  was added a 1.8 M solution of LDA (0.66 mL, 1.19 mmol). After stirring for 1.5 h at  $-78^{\circ}\text{C}$  and 0.5 h at  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$ , the reaction was cooled again to  $-78^{\circ}\text{C}$  and iodomethane (0.2 mL, 3.21 mmol) was added. The mixture was stirred at  $-78^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 1 h and at  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 4 h. After warming to rt, water and EtOAc were added and the layers were separated. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ), filtered then concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified *via* preparative HPLC (Luna C-18, 21.1 x 100 mm, eluting with 75-100% solvent B (A = 90%  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  - 10% MeOH - 0.1% TFA and B = 10%  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  - 90% MeOH - 0.1% TFA) over 12 min; Flow rate at 20 mL/min. UV detection at 220 nm) to provide the title compound (36 mg). LC/MS  $m/z$  374  $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ .

20

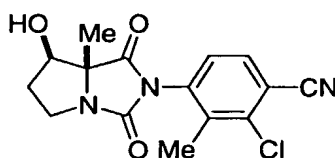
60B. (7*R*,7*aR*)-4-[7-(*tert*-Butyldimethylsilanyloxy)-7*a*-methyl-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-*c*]imidazol-2-yl]-2-chloro-3-methylbenzonitrile

25



A solution of (2*R*,3*R*)-3-(*tert*-Butyldimethylsilyloxy)-2-methylpyrrolidine-1,2-dicarboxylic acid 1-*tert*-butyl ester-2-methyl ester (**60A**) (52 mg, 0.14 mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (1.5 mL) and TFA (0.5 mL) was stirred at rt for 2 h.  
 5 The reaction was concentrated under reduced pressure and dried under vacuum. The residue was dissolved in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (1.5 mL) and Hunig's base (60 µL, 0.35 mmol) was added. After stirring at rt for 10 min, 2-chloro-4-isocyanato-3-methylbenzonitrile (34 mg, 0.18 mmol) was added and the reaction was stirred at rt overnight. The reaction was treated with DBU (40 µL, 0.27 mmol) and  
 10 was stirred for 4 h at rt then concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified *via* chromatography (silica gel) eluting with 30% EtOAc in hexane to provide the title compound (54 mg). LC/MS *m/z* 434 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>.

**60C. (7*R*,7*aR*)-2-Chloro-4-(7-hydroxy-7*a*-methyl-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-*c*]imidazol-2-yl)-3-methylbenzonitrile**  
 15



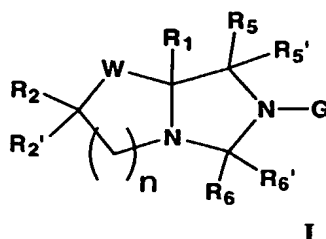
A solution of (7*R*,7*aR*)-4-[7-(*tert*-Butyldimethylsilyloxy)-7*a*-methyl-1,3-dioxotetrahydropyrrolo[1,2-*c*]imidazol-2-yl]-2-chloro-3-methylbenzonitrile (**60B**) (32 mg, 0.07 mmol) in THF (2 mL) in a plastic vial was cooled to 0 °C. HF/pyridine complex (0.12 mL) was added and the reaction was stirred at 0 °C for 1 h and at rt overnight. Saturated aqueous NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> were added. The layers were separated and the organic layer was concentrated under  
 25 reduced pressure. The residue was purified *via* chromatography (silica gel)

eluting with 75% EtOAc in hexane to provide the title compound (16 mg).  
LC/MS  $m/z$  320  $[M+H]^+$ .

**WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:**

1. A pharmaceutical composition capable of modulating the androgen receptor comprising a compound of the formula I

5



wherein

$R_1$  is selected from hydrogen (H), alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl,  $\text{CO}_2\text{R}_4$ ,  $\text{CONR}_4\text{R}_4'$  and  $\text{CH}_2\text{OR}_4$ ;

10

$R_2$  and  $R_2'$  are each independently selected from hydrogen (H), alkyl, substituted alkyl,  $\text{OR}_3$ ,  $\text{SR}_3$ , halo,  $\text{NHR}_4$ ,  $\text{NHCOR}_4$ ,  $\text{NHCO}_2\text{R}_4$ ,  $\text{NHCONR}_4\text{R}_4'$  and  $\text{NHSO}_2\text{R}_4$ ;

and at least one of  $R_2$  and  $R_2'$  is H or alkyl, with the exception that  $R_2$  and  $R_2'$  can both be  $\text{OR}_3$  when  $R_3$  is not H;

15

$R_3$  in each functional group is independently selected from hydrogen (H), alkyl or substituted alkyl,  $\text{CHF}_2$ ,  $\text{CF}_3$  and  $\text{COR}_4$ ;

$R_4$  and  $R_4'$  in each functional group are each independently selected from hydrogen(H), alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl, and heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl;

20

$R_5$  and  $R_5'$  are each independently selected from hydrogen(H), alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl, and heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl, wherein at least one of

25

R<sub>5</sub> and R<sub>5</sub>' is hydrogen, or R<sub>5</sub> and R<sub>5</sub>' taken together can form a double bond with oxygen (O), sulfur (S), NR<sub>7</sub> or CR<sub>7</sub>R<sub>7</sub>';

R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>6</sub>' are each independently selected from hydrogen(H), alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, 5 cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl, and heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl, wherein at least one of R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>6</sub>' is hydrogen, or R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>6</sub>' taken together can form a double bond with oxygen (O), sulfur (S), NR<sub>7</sub> or CR<sub>7</sub>R<sub>7</sub>';

R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>7</sub>' in each functional group are each independently selected 10 from hydrogen(H), OR<sub>4</sub>, alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl and heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl;

G is an aryl, heterocyclo or heteroaryl group, wherein said group is 15 mono- or polycyclic, and which is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from hydrogen, halo, CN, CF<sub>3</sub>, OR<sub>4</sub>, CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>4</sub>, NR<sub>4</sub>R<sub>4</sub>', CONR<sub>4</sub>R<sub>4</sub>', CH<sub>2</sub>OR<sub>4</sub>, alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl and heteroaryl or substituted 20 heteroaryl; and

W is selected from (CR<sub>6</sub>R<sub>6</sub>'), C(R<sub>6</sub>)OR<sub>3</sub>, C(R<sub>6</sub>)(NR<sub>4</sub>R<sub>4</sub>'),

n is an integer of 1 or 2;

including all prodrug esters, pharmaceutically acceptable salts and stereoisomers thereof,

25 with the following provisos:

(a) when R<sub>5</sub> and R<sub>5</sub>' and/or R<sub>6</sub> and R<sub>6</sub>' form a double bond with CR<sub>7</sub>R<sub>7</sub>', when either R<sub>7</sub> or R<sub>7</sub>' is OR<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>4</sub> is not hydrogen;

(b) excluding compounds where the following occur simultaneously:

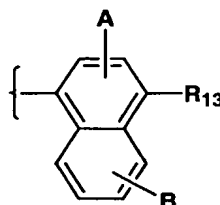
R<sub>2</sub> or R<sub>2</sub>' are hydrogen, OR<sub>3</sub>, halo, NHCOR<sub>4</sub>, NHCO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>4</sub>, NHCONR<sub>4</sub>R<sub>4</sub>' 30 or NHSO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>4</sub>;

$R_5$  and  $R_5'$  are hydrogen or form a double bond with oxygen or sulfur;

$R_6$  and  $R_6'$  are hydrogen, alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl, or heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl, wherein at least one of  $R_6$  and  $R_6'$  is hydrogen, or  $R_6$  and  $R_6'$  taken together form a double bond with oxygen (O), sulfur (S) or  $NR_7$ ;

$R_7$  is hydrogen, alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl, or heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl; and

G has the following structure:



wherein

$R_{13}$  is selected from hydrogen (H), cyano (-CN), nitro (-NO<sub>2</sub>), halo, heterocyclo, OR<sub>14</sub>, CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>15</sub>, CONHR<sub>15</sub>, COR<sub>15</sub>, S(O)<sub>p</sub>R<sub>15</sub>, SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sub>15</sub>R<sub>15'</sub>, NHCOR<sub>15</sub> and NHSO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>15</sub>;

$R_{14}$  in each functional group is independently selected from hydrogen (H), alkyl or substituted alkyl, CHF<sub>2</sub>, CF<sub>3</sub> and COR<sub>15</sub>;

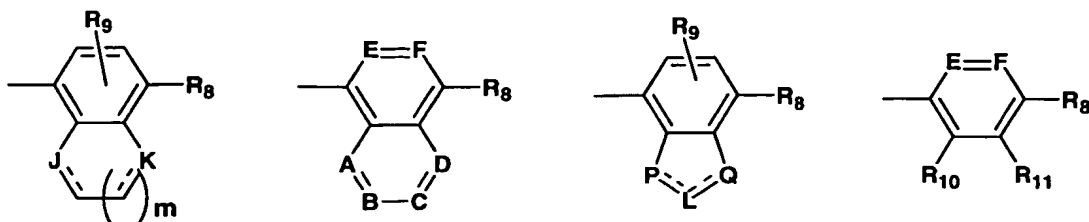
$R_{15}$  and  $R_{15}'$  in each functional group are each independently selected from hydrogen(H), alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl or substituted heterocycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl, heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl and -CN;

A and B are each independently selected from hydrogen (H), halo, cyano(-CN), nitro(-NO<sub>2</sub>), alkyl or substituted alkyl and OR<sub>14</sub>; and

p is an integer from 0 to 2.



2. The compound as defined in claim 1 wherein G is selected from:



wherein

5  $R_8$ ,  $R_9$ ,  $R_{10}$  and  $R_{11}$  are each independently selected from hydrogen (H),  $\text{NO}_2$ , CN,  $\text{CF}_3$ ,  $\text{OR}_4$ ,  $\text{CO}_2\text{R}_4$ ,  $\text{NR}_4\text{R}_4'$ ,  $\text{CONR}_4\text{R}_4'$ ,  $\text{CH}_2\text{OR}_4$ , alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl and heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl;

10 A to F is each independently selected from N or  $\text{CR}_9$ ;

J, K, L, P and Q are each independently selected from  $\text{NR}_{12}$ , O, S, SO,  $\text{SO}_2$  or  $\text{CR}_{12}\text{R}_{12}'$ ;

$R_{12}$  and  $R_{12}'$  in each functional group are each independently selected from a bond or  $\text{R}_1$ ; and

15 m is an integer of 0 or 1.

3. The compound as defined in claim 2 wherein

$\text{R}_1$  is hydrogen (H) or alkyl;

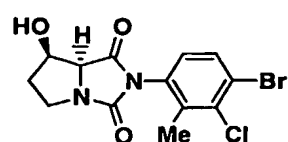
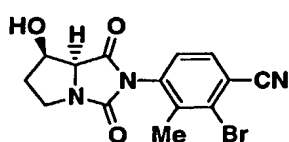
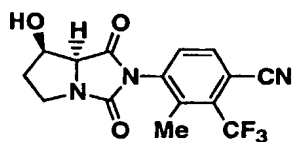
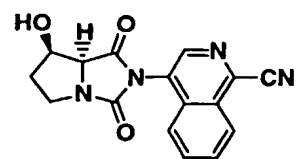
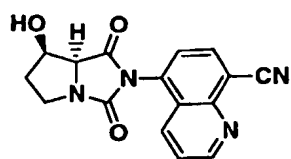
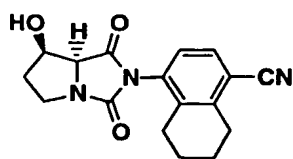
$\text{R}_2$  or  $\text{R}_2'$  is hydroxyl (OH);

20  $\text{R}_5$  and  $\text{R}_5'$  are hydrogen or are taken together form a double bond with oxygen (O) or sulfur (S); and

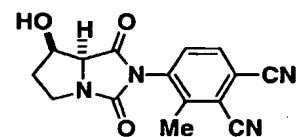
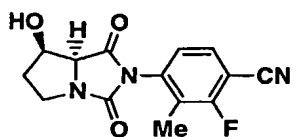
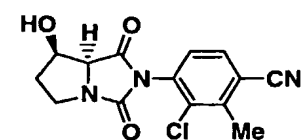
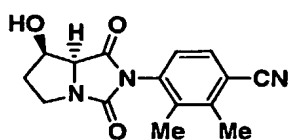
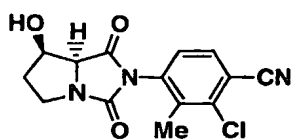
$\text{R}_6$  and  $\text{R}_6'$  are taken together form a double bond with oxygen (O) or sulfur (S).

25 4. The compound as defined in claim 2 wherein  $\text{R}_8$  is CN.

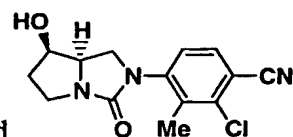
5. The compound as defined in claim 1 selected from:



5

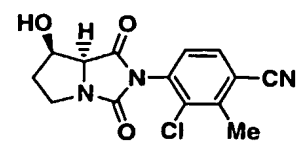
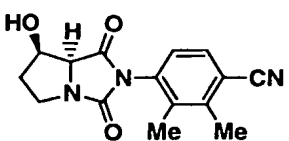
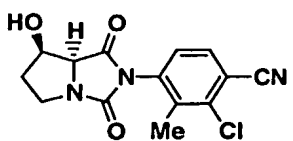
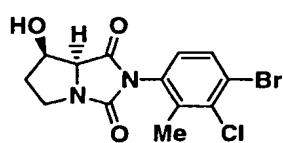
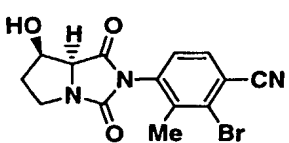
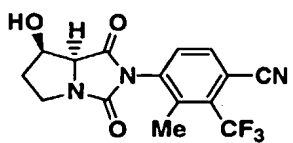


and

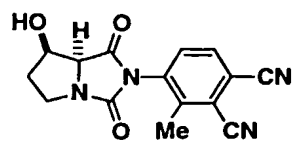
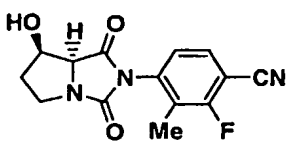


10

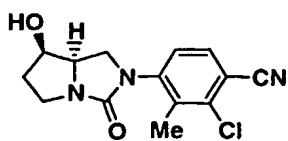
6. The compound as defined in claim 1 selected from:



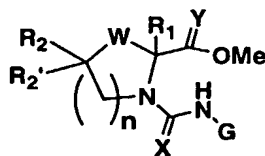
15



and



## 7. A compound of formula Ih



Ih

wherein

R<sub>1</sub> is selected from hydrogen (H), alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>4</sub>, CONR<sub>4</sub>R<sub>4</sub>' and CH<sub>2</sub>OR<sub>4</sub>;

R<sub>2</sub> and R<sub>2</sub>' are each independently selected from hydrogen (H), alkyl, substituted alkyl, OR<sub>3</sub>, SR<sub>3</sub>, halo, NHR<sub>4</sub>, NHCOR<sub>4</sub>, NHCO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>4</sub>, NHCONR<sub>4</sub>R<sub>4</sub>' and NHSO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>4</sub>;

and at least one of R<sub>2</sub> and R<sub>2</sub>' is H or alkyl, with the exception that R<sub>2</sub> and R<sub>2</sub>' can both be OR<sub>3</sub> when R<sub>3</sub> is not H;

R<sub>3</sub> in each functional group is independently selected from hydrogen (H), alkyl or substituted alkyl, CHF<sub>2</sub>, CF<sub>3</sub> and COR<sub>4</sub>;

R<sub>4</sub> and R<sub>4</sub>' in each functional group are each independently selected from hydrogen(H), alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl, and heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl;

X and Y are each independently oxygen (O) or sulfur (S);

G is an aryl, heterocyclo or heteroaryl group, wherein said group is mono- or polycyclic, and which is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, halo, CN, CF<sub>3</sub>, OR<sub>4</sub>, CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>4</sub>, NR<sub>4</sub>R<sub>4</sub>', CONR<sub>4</sub>R<sub>4</sub>', CH<sub>2</sub>OR<sub>4</sub>, alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted

cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl and heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl; and

W is selected from  $(\text{CR}_6\text{R}_6')$ ,  $\text{C}(\text{R}_6)\text{OR}_3$ ,  $\text{C}(\text{R}_6)(\text{NR}_4\text{R}_4')$ ,

n is an integer of 1 or 2;

5 including all prodrug esters, pharmaceutically acceptable salts and stereoisomers thereof,

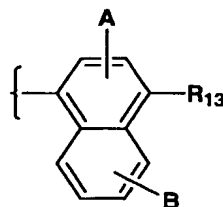
with the following proviso:

(a) excluding compounds where the following occur simultaneously:

$\text{R}_2$  or  $\text{R}_2'$  is hydrogen,  $\text{OR}_3$ , halo,  $\text{NHCOR}_4$ ,  $\text{NHCO}_2\text{R}_4$ ,  $\text{NHCONR}_4\text{R}_4'$

10 or  $\text{NHSO}_2\text{R}_4$ ; and

G has the following structure:



wherein

$\text{R}_{13}$  is selected from hydrogen (H), cyano (-CN), nitro (-NO<sub>2</sub>), halo, heterocyclo,  $\text{OR}_{14}$ ,  $\text{CO}_2\text{R}_{15}$ ,  $\text{CONHR}_{15}$ ,  $\text{COR}_{15}$ ,  $\text{S}(\text{O})_p\text{R}_{15}$ ,  $\text{SO}_2\text{NR}_{15}\text{R}_{15}'$ ,  $\text{NHCOR}_{15}$  and  $\text{NHSO}_2\text{R}_{15}$ ;

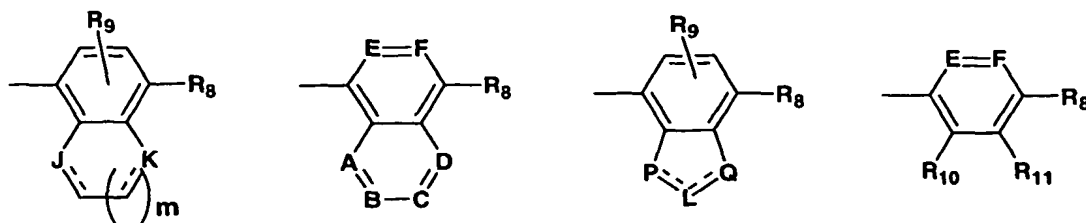
$\text{R}_{14}$  in each functional group is independently selected from (H), alkyl or substituted alkyl,  $\text{CHF}_2$ ,  $\text{CF}_3$  and  $\text{COR}_{15}$ ;

$\text{R}_{15}$  and  $\text{R}_{15}'$  in each functional group are each independently selected from hydrogen(H), alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl or substituted heterocycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl, heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl and -CN;

A and B are each independently selected from hydrogen (H), halo, cyano(-CN), nitro(-NO<sub>2</sub>), alkyl or substituted alkyl and  $\text{OR}_{14}$ ; and

p is an integer from 0 to 2.

8. The compound as defined in claim 7 wherein G is selected from:



wherein

5  $R_8$ ,  $R_9$ ,  $R_{10}$  and  $R_{11}$  in each functional group are each independently selected from hydrogen (H),  $\text{NO}_2$ , CN,  $\text{CF}_3$ ,  $\text{OR}_4$ ,  $\text{CO}_2\text{R}_4$ ,  $\text{NR}_4\text{R}_4'$ ,  $\text{CONR}_4\text{R}_4'$ ,  $\text{CH}_2\text{OR}_4$ , alkyl or substituted alkyl, alkenyl or substituted alkenyl, alkynyl or substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl or substituted cycloalkyl, arylalkyl or substituted arylalkyl, aryl or substituted aryl and heteroaryl or substituted heteroaryl;

A to F is each independently selected from N or  $\text{CR}_9$ ;

J, K, L, P and Q are each independently selected from  $\text{NR}_{12}$ , O, S, SO,  $\text{SO}_2$  or  $\text{CR}_{12}\text{R}_{12}'$ ;

15  $R_{12}$  and  $R_{12}'$  in each functional group are each independently selected from a bond or  $\text{R}_1$ ; and

m is an integer of 0 or 1.

9. The compound as defined in claim 8 wherein

$\text{R}_1$  is hydrogen (H) or alkyl; and

20  $\text{R}_2$  or  $\text{R}_2'$  is hydroxyl (OH).

10. The compound as defined in claim 8 wherein  $\text{R}_8$  is CN.

11. The pharmaceutical composition as defined in claim 1 further comprising a growth promoting agent.

12. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound as defined in claim 1 and at least one additional therapeutic agent selected from other compounds of formula I, parathyroid hormone, bisphosphonates, estrogen, testosterone, progesterone, selective estrogen receptor modulators, growth hormone secretagogues, growth hormone, progesterone receptor  
5 modulators, anti-diabetic agents, anti-hypertensive agents, anti-inflammatory agents, anti-osteoporosis agents, anti-obesity agents, cardiac glycosides, cholesterol lowering agents, anti-depressants, anti-anxiety agents, anabolic agents, and thyroid mimetics.

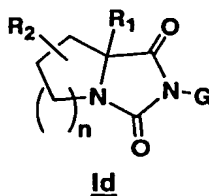
10

13. A method for treating or delaying the progression or onset of muscular atrophy, lipodistrophy, long-term critical illness, sarcopenia, frailty or age-related functional decline, reduced muscle strength and function, reduced bone density or growth, the catabolic side effects of glucocorticoids, chronic  
15 fatigue syndrome, bone fracture repair, acute fatigue syndrome and muscle loss following elective surgery, cachexia, chronic catabolic state, eating disorders, side effects of chemotherapy, wasting, depression, nervousness, irritability, stress, growth retardation, reduced cognitive function, male contraception, hypogonadism, Syndrome X, diabetic complications or obesity, which  
20 comprises administering to a mammalian species in need of treatment a therapeutically effective amount of a pharmaceutical composition as defined in claim 1.

14. A method according to claim 13 further comprising  
25 administering, concurrently or sequentially, a therapeutically effective amount of at least one additional therapeutic agent selected from the group consisting of other compounds formula I, parathyroid hormone, bisphosphonates, estrogen, testosterone, progesterone, selective estrogen receptor modulators, growth hormone secretagogues, growth hormone, progesterone receptor  
30 modulators, anti-diabetic agents, anti-hypertensive agents, anti-inflammatory

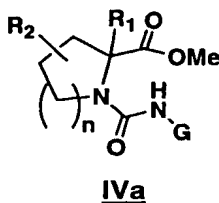
agents, anti-osteoporosis agents, anti-obesity agents, cardiac glycosides, cholesterol lowering agents, anti-depressants, anti-anxiety agents, anabolic agents and thyroid mimetics.

- 5 15. A process for preparing a compound of formula Id

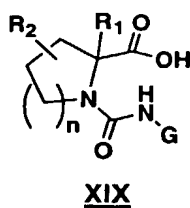


which comprises hydrolyzing a compound of formula IVa

10



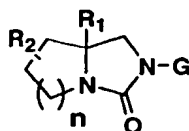
under basic conditions to give the compound of formula XIX



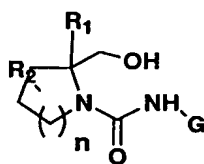
15

which is then carried on to a compound of formula Id with the use of a coupling reagent.

- 20 16. A process for preparing a compound of formula Ie

Ie

which comprises optionally protecting the compound of formula IVa, when R<sub>2</sub> is OH,  
 with a protecting group by treatment with a silylating reagent and then reduced with a  
 5 reducing agent to give a compound of formula XX

XX

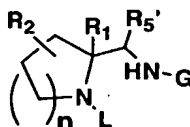
which is then derivatized with a leaving group and p-toluenesulfonyl chloride  
 and then treated with a base to give the compound of formula Ie.

10

17. The process of claim 16 wherein the protecting group is tert-  
 Butyldimethylsilyl; the silylating reagent is tert-Butyldimethylsilyl (chloride); the  
 reducing agent is lithium aluminum hydride or lithium borohydride; the leaving group  
 is Tosyl; the base is potassium tert-butoxide.

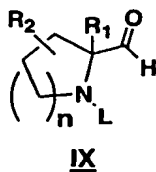
15

18. A process for preparing a compound of formula XII ,

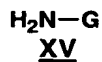
XII

20 which comprises reacting an aldehyde of formula IX



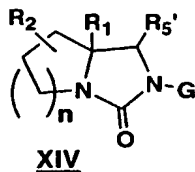


with an amine of formula XV

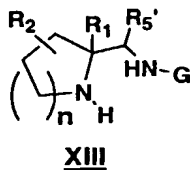


in the presence of a reducing agent to give the compound of formula XII.

19. A process for preparing a compound of formula XIV



which comprises subjecting the compound of formula XII prepared by the process of claim 18 to N-deprotection to form a compound of formula XIII



and reacting the compound of formula XIII with phosgene or a phosgene equivalent in the presence of a base to form the compound of formula XIV.